

1  
2  
3  
4  
5

Kentucky School Bus Driver Trainer Manual

Revised 2019

DRAFT

1 **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

2  
3 The Kentucky Department of Education recognizes the need to have a uniform driver training  
4 program. The original manual was created by the Pupil Transportation Branch, with the  
5 assistance of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other national and state  
6 agencies.

7  
8 The Kentucky Department of Education worked with the FMCSA, Kentucky State Police,  
9 Kentucky Transportation Cabinet, transportation directors and driver trainers from throughout  
10 the state to incorporate updated training material and to remove outdated information. Together,  
11 we have developed a standardized and comprehensive school bus driver training instructor  
12 manual, which will conform to future FMCSA requirements, and continue coordinated efforts to  
13 ensure the safety of school children statewide.

14  
15 The purpose of the instructional program is to provide school bus driver training instructors  
16 across the state of Kentucky, with a standardized and comprehensive curriculum to train and  
17 qualify new and previously employed school bus drivers.

18  
19 **FOREWORD**

20 The information contained herein, is the official curriculum of the Kentucky Department of  
21 Education to be used in training local district school bus drivers.

22  
23 **TRAINING CONCEPT**

24 The purpose of this training manual is to use in the:

- 25 1. Training and certifying Kentucky School Bus Driver Training Instructors, also known as  
26 Driver Trainers.
- 27 a. Driver trainers shall satisfactorily complete curriculum requirements and  
28 evaluation through a training workshop, provided by the Kentucky Department of  
29 Education, Division of District Support, Pupil Transportation Branch, prior to the  
30 award of a driver training instructor certificate. A driver trainer shall attend an  
31 annual six hour update, approved and developed by the Kentucky Department of

1 Education, Division of District Support, Pupil Transportation Branch.

2  
3 2. Training, certifying, and re-certifying Kentucky school bus drivers utilizing this  
4 curriculum.

5 a. School bus drivers shall be trained using the “Kentucky School Bus Driver  
6 Trainer Manual,” and satisfactorily complete training requirements and evaluation  
7 by the driver trainer prior to receiving a driver certificate from the Kentucky  
8 Department of Education, Division of District Support, Pupil Transportation  
9 Branch.

10 b. Kentucky school bus drivers require an annual update in order to renew their  
11 certification. The annual update consists of eight (8) hours of classroom, on-the-  
12 track and over-the-road training provided by the driver trainers and pertaining to  
13 the core curriculum.

14 NOTE: A certificate of Completion/Renewal will be issued by the driver  
15 trainers upon satisfactory completion of the initial driver training course  
16 and after each scheduled eight (8) hour mandatory annual update.

17  
18 The Kentucky Department of Education, Division of District Support, Pupil Transportation  
19 Branch, grants certification of all drivers and driver trainers. This certification may be revoked,  
20 at any time, at the discretion of the Kentucky Department of Education, Division of District  
21 Support, Pupil Transportation Branch. Improperly training a driver, falsifying documentation,  
22 failure to properly certify a driver, and failure to attend mandatory updates, may qualify as  
23 reasons to have certifications revoked.

24  
25 **INSTRUCTOR CLASS ENROLLMENT**

26 A school district may nominate a current school bus driver, or person with at least two years of  
27 experience with school buses, to become a school bus driver trainer. This person must complete  
28 the curriculum and be dedicated to the enhancement of school bus safety in Kentucky.

29 Independent contractors or private school personnel may attend these classes when openings are  
30 available.

31

1 **METHOD OF INSTRUCTION (MOI)**

2 This section is for the driver trainer instructor only. It is taught during the driver trainer instructor  
3 course and are reminders of good methods to use while teaching.

4

5 **OBJECTIVES**

- 6 • Understand the Principals of Instruction.
- 7 • Learn the characteristics of a good instructor.
- 8 • Understand good speech and questioning techniques.
- 9 • Recognize instructional aids.
- 10 • Learn demonstration methods.

11

12 **PRINCIPLES OF INSTRUCTION**

13 **The Instructional Situation**

- 14 1. Objective of scope (what and why)
- 15 2. Level of student (who)
- 16 3. Facilities (where)
- 17 4. Instructional aids (how)
- 18 5. Time (when)
- 19 6. Method (how)
- 20 7. Evaluation

21

22 **Organization of Materials**

- 23 1. Teaching unit
- 24 2. Dry run

25

26 **INSTRUCTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

27 **Characteristics of a good instructor**

- 28 1. Knowledge of the subject

- 1           2. Leadership ability
- 2           3. Positive personality
- 3           4. Knowledge of teaching techniques
- 4           5. Professional attitude

5

6   **Instructor Improvement**

- 7           1. Know what makes a good instructor
- 8           2. Seek help of associates
- 9           3. Concentrate on specific elements
- 10          4. Observe specific elements
- 11          5. Analyze your own characteristics
- 12          6. Make constant effort to improve

13

14   **Understand Students**

- 15          1. Learn background
- 16          2. Student characteristics

17

18   **Pitfalls to Avoid**

- 19          1. Do not bluff
- 20          2. Do not use profanity or obscenity
- 21          3. Do not use sarcasm or ridicule
- 22          4. Do not talk down to class
- 23          5. Do not lose patience

24

25   **SPEECH TECHNIQUES**

26   **Traits of a Good Speaker**

- 27          1. Commit yourself
- 28          2. Analyze audience

- 1 3. Organize thoughts
- 2 4. Think sight and sound
- 3 5. Practice
- 4 6. Relax.
- 5 7. Enjoy.

6  
7 **Avoid Nervousness**

- 8 1. Be prepared
- 9 2. Have a good attitude
- 10 3. Know opening remarks
- 11 4. Review previous instruction
- 12 5. Tell a story
- 13 6. Slow down

14  
15 **Characteristics of a Speaker**

16 <u>Desirable</u>	17 <u>Undesirable</u>
18 Humorous	18 Monotone
19 Dynamic	19 Hmm-Well Ah-Ya Know
20 Confident	20 No Eye Contact
21 Enthusiastic	21 Rambling
22 Organized/To the Point	22 No Continuity

23  
24 **QUESTIONING TECHNIQUES**

25 **Purpose of Questions**

- 26 1. Improves student interest
- 27 2. Stimulates thinking
- 28 3. Adjusts instruction to class level
- 29 4. Reveals student attitude

- 1 5. Permits student contribution
- 2 6. Provides emphasis and reinforcement of main points
- 3 7. Checks effectiveness of instruction

4

5 **Characteristics of a Good Question**

- 6 1. Have a specific purpose
- 7 2. Emphasis one point
- 8 3. Understood by all
- 9 4. Discourage guessing
- 10 5. Thought-provoking

11

12 **Questioning Strategies**

- 13 1. Build-up
- 14 2. Asking the question
  - 15 a. Ask
  - 16 b. Pause
  - 17 c. Call

18

19 **Follow-up.**

- 20 1. Guide the subject in depth
- 21 2. Develop the subject in depth
- 22 3. Develop total student participation

23

24 **INSTRUCTIONAL AIDS**

25 **Advantages of Learning Aids**

- 26 1. Takes pressure off
- 27 2. Saves time
- 28 3. Produces better learning

1 4. Introduces more than two (2) senses into learning process

2

3 **Proper Steps in Using Learning Aids**

4 1. Determine lesson objectives

5 2. Select appropriate aid

6 3. Prepare for use of aid

7 4. Keep aid covered or turned off

8 5. Explain to class

9 6. Be sure all can see and hear

10 7. Use pointer to direct attention

11 8. Use assistant, if appropriate

12

13 **Use of Specific Aids**

14 **Chalkboard/Whiteboard:**

15 A. Neat, simple, legible

16 B. Quick

17 C. Prepare: chalk, pencil, markers, etc

18 D. Cover newsprint

19

20 **Projectors:**

21 A. Prepare: check bulb, focus, adaptor, extension cord, lines of vision, functional  
22 pens, on and off switch

23 B. Techniques

24 1. Use actual object

25 2. Use professional resources, if possible

26 3. Use teacher-prepared materials

27

28 **Audio and Video:**



- 1 A. Discuss advantages (technical, professional quality)
- 2 B. Discuss disadvantages (may not be right for your situation)
- 3 C. Others – list bulletin board models, simulators, handouts, internet, television and
- 4 print materials

5 **Cautions:**

- 6 • Don't overuse – “a few PowerPoint slides go a long way”
- 7 • Use titles on all materials
- 8 • Practice before class

9

10 **DEMONSTRATION METHODS**

11 **Explanation**

- 12 1. Convey the precise actions they are to perform
- 13 2. Describe the desired results of their efforts
- 14 3. Encourage questions during the demonstrations
- 15 4. Use training aids
- 16 5. Motivate

17

18 **Demonstration**

19 Instructor shows and explains to students the actions necessary in performing skills.

- 20 1. **Informal Demonstration**, also called on the job training – i.e., an inspector stops by
- 21 where the employee is working and reinforces a process.

22

a. Advantages

23

- easier – less planning

24

- good for individual coaching

25

- reinforces good habits and skills

26

b. Disadvantages

27

- time consuming

- 1                   ○ other workers may be disrupted by the training
- 2 2. **Formal Demonstration** – requires more planning, but results in better prepared trainees.
- 3                   Makes best use of available time for training.

4                   A good demonstration

- 5                   a. follows logical sequences, with distinct breaks between steps;
- 6                   b. is seen and understood – (student placement);
- 7                   c. has frequent checks on student understanding (asks specific questions and
- 8                   encourages questions); and
- 9                   d. visual aids are used when appropriate

10

11 **STUDENT PERFORMANCE AND INSTRUCTOR SUPERVISION**

12 Discussed together because they are performed concurrently.

13 **Instructor**

- 14                   A. Must allow enough time for student learning
- 15                   B. Must teach to each students understanding
- 16                   C. Must make the student feel comfortable when mistakes are made so they will ask
- 17                   questions

18

19 **Student**

- 20                   A. Must practice (needs instructor supervision on occasion)
- 21                   B. Follow correct procedures
- 22                   C. Meet a reasonable time schedule

23

24 **Evaluation**

- 25                   A. Judge student performance
- 26                   B. Keep student interest high
- 27                   C. Instructor measures quality of his/her instruction
- 28

1 **REMEMBER!**

2 NOBODY CARES HOW MUCH YOU KNOW...  
3 UNTIL HE OR SHE KNOWS HOW MUCH YOU CARE!  
4  
5

6 **TRAINING, CERTIFYING, AND PROPERLY SCORING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS**

7  
8 **OBJECTIVES**

- 9 • Understand the training and certification requirements for a school bus driver.  
10 • Understand the proper scoring of a school bus driver.  
11 • Learn the model technique for the certification process.  
12

13 **INTRODUCTION**

14 This chapter is for the use of driver trainers only, and will go over the sequence of events that  
15 should occur when training a school bus driver. All school districts should have their own  
16 training calendar, but the steps involved should all be covered. This model technique is a  
17 recommended step-by-step procedure for training school bus drivers, that has been used for over  
18 twenty years, and ensures a driver receives all the required training and is documented properly.  
19 All documentation must be present in the driver's training file showing successful completion of  
20 each training requirement. Only successful attempts shall be maintained in the state training file,  
21 as this indicates the task completion. Each prior attempt may be kept in a separate folder to show  
22 progress, but it is not needed for the state training file. All written tests shall be taken in the  
23 classroom, closed books. Tests shall not be taken home to be completed.  
24

25 **PROPER SCORING OF ALL SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS**

26 The driver trainer has the flexibility to use their own judgment when scoring students, but should  
27 be fair and consistent. The students should know and understand the requirements before being  
28 graded. Clearly explain all aspects of the testing, what is expected, and what is required to  
29 receive a passing grade. By doing this, a driver trainer sets the student up for success.  
30

1 **Passing Score**

2 A student shall score a minimum of 80% for each written test in order to have a passing score.  
3 The over-the-road and range are all pass or fail in order to ensure the student has the knowledge,  
4 skills and ability to control the school bus safely with students on board.

5 **STEP-BY-STEP PROCEDURES**

6 This section provides the step-by-step procedures that should be followed in order to ensure  
7 the students are acceptable in all required areas.

8  
9 **Pre-Employment**

10 **Step 1- Application**

11 The applicant shall complete a school district application. The driver trainer and/or transportation  
12 director should review the application to determine if the applicant fits the criteria of the job  
13 position.

14  
15 **Step 2-Interview**

16 The transportation director, or their designee, and the driver trainer should interview the  
17 applicant. Each district may use their own interviewing techniques or utilize the interview sheet  
18 provided in this manual. The interview sheet provided in this manual does have scores attached  
19 to it and may be used to help identify applicants.

20  
21 **Step 3- Education Verification**

22 The driver applicant must have at least a high school diploma, GED or currently show progress  
23 toward obtaining his/her diploma as determined by 13 KAR 3:030, qualifications for progressing  
24 satisfactorily through a GED program. Verify proper education and place the verification in the  
25 driver's file.

26  
27 **Step 4-Driver Licensing Record Check**

28 The applicant should complete a request for a driver licensing record check. A driver trainer and  
29 the Transportation Director should review the driver licensing record and the local school board  
30 transportation employment policies to decide whether the applicant qualifies to be employed as a  
31 School Bus Driver. Each local school district **shall** develop local board polices outlining  
32 employment parameters.

1 **\*If a driver is not from Kentucky, a driver licensing record check shall be done from the**  
2 **previous states of residency.**

3

#### 4 **Step 5-Criminal Record Check**

5 Per KRS 160.380, A superintendent shall require a national and state criminal background check  
6 and require a letter, provided by the individual, from the Cabinet for Health and Family Services  
7 stating the employee is clear to hire based on no findings of substantiated child abuse or neglect  
8 found through a background check of child abuse and neglect records maintained by the Cabinet  
9 for Health and Family Services on all classified initial hires. A driver trainer and the  
10 transportation director should review the records and the local school board transportation  
11 employment policies to decide whether the applicant qualifies to be employed as a school bus  
12 driver. Each school district **shall** develop local board polices outlining employment parameters.  
13 An Administrative Office of the Courts (AOC) report will not satisfy this requirement. An AOC  
14 report may give preliminary information regarding the candidate, but is not a full CRC.

15

#### 16 **Step 6-Physical**

17 The applicant shall obtain his/her physical through the school board's assigned Certified Medical  
18 Examiner. Any applicant that has a physical from someone other than the board physician, may  
19 be required to redo the physical at the request of the district. All physicals shall be recent to  
20 ensure the applicant's health has not changed. A district may reject a physical that was not  
21 completed by the board physician. Provide the applicant the physical forms per the CDL federal  
22 guidelines as well as any other tests required by the state or district. Upon the forms being  
23 returned, review them to verify if the applicant passed their physical.

24

25 \*The physical forms can be obtained through the Federal Motor Carriers Safety Administration  
26 website.

27

#### 28 **Step 7-Pre-Employment Controlled Substance and Alcohol Test**

29 As a condition for employment, a driver applicant must be administered an Alcohol and  
30 Controlled Substance test. The results of the test must be screened, and are confidential. The test

1 results should be kept in a separate folder, such as the personnel file, and not in the driver's  
2 training records.

3

#### 4 **Step 8- All Clear**

5 Once everything is reviewed and is acceptable, the applicant can be enrolled in the Driver  
6 Training Program.

7

8 \*From this point forward, for the purpose of this training guide, the applicant will be referred to  
9 as the "student".

10

11 \*\*A letter of acceptance should be sent to the student. The letter should congratulate them for  
12 being accepted and inform them of the specifics of the first class, i.e. location, time, attire, etc.

13

#### 14 **Step 9- Road Test**

15 The driver trainer should administer the road test to evaluate the student's driving habits and  
16 ability to follow directions. It is recommended to use a car or school van, and not allow the  
17 student to drive a school bus, in addition to remaining on the school property if possible, for  
18 safety purposes. The Road Test should only take five minutes to complete and is not the time to  
19 decide if the driver can actually drive.

20

#### 21 **STEP 10 – Training**

22 Inform the student of the requirements for the Commercial Driver's License (CDL), and go over  
23 all the information for the CDL written tests. The four (4) CDL written tests are General  
24 Knowledge, Air Brakes, Passenger, and School Bus.

25

26 After passing the tests, the student will obtain their CDL permit. From this date, the student must  
27 wait fourteen (14) calendar days before taking the skills test. Per the federal guidelines, the  
28 student must complete the Entry Level Driver Training Course (ELDT) prior to taking the CDL  
29 Skills Test. This manual covers all information required to satisfy the federal guidelines of the  
30 ELDT coursework. The time between taking the written test and taking the skills test, should be  
31 used to complete the driver training curriculum.

1 **Driver Training**

2 It is acceptable to use outside professional sources as references, speakers, etc., in any classroom  
3 topic. The driver trainer must always be in the room to ensure all pertinent information in the  
4 driver training manual is covered. The driver trainer is responsible for documenting that the  
5 proper training has taken place. It is always acceptable to exceed the minimum required training  
6 hours, as safety is the number one goal.

7  
8 **The student shall score at least 80% on each required test. If the student scores below 80%  
9 he/she will need remedial training and retesting.**

10 The tests are located at the end of the manual.

11  
12 **Driver Training Manual**

13 When training a new driver, it is best to start at the beginning of the manual and work through to  
14 the end. There is a minimum of twenty one (21) hours required to complete this training: fifteen  
15 (15) hours of classroom training and six (6) hours of behind-the-wheel training. There are  
16 minimum training requirements for each chapter. It is always acceptable to provide more training  
17 than is required, but never less than the required time. All information in this manual shall be  
18 covered in order to fulfill state and federal requirements. Some areas may require more time than  
19 the minimum suggested. A driver trainer should never pass a student they feel is not safe or  
20 ready to take control of a bus alone.

21  
22 **Chapter 1-Laws and Regulations**

23 This training is a two (2) hour minimum requirement. The laws and regulations should be printed  
24 out separately by utilizing the Legislative Research Commission's website at  
25 <https://legislature.ky.gov>. There are sixteen (16) laws and regulations that are covered in this  
26 chapter.

27  
28 **Chapter 2-Driving Fundamentals**

29 This training is a two (2) hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the basics of the  
30 school bus, differences between the Type C and D buses, and discuss defensive, distracted, and  
31 night time driving. This chapter also covers traffic control devices and signs.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**Chapter 3-Care and Maintenance**

This training is a two (2) hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the basic bus components, detecting signs of trouble, identifying preventive measures for wear and tear, and the pre-trip inspection.

**Chapter 4-Critical Situations**

This training is a one-hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the causes of critical situations, recognizing and responding to emergencies, stopping quickly and safely, and evacuating the school bus.

**Chapter 5-Vehicle Operation**

This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement of classroom instruction time. The classroom portion of the class should be completed prior to allowing a student behind the wheel of a school bus. It is to educate the student of what is expected while on the road. The behind-the-wheel portion of the training will allow the student to become familiar with the school bus.

**Vehicle Operation Part I – (Behind the Wheel)**

This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement of behind-the-wheel instruction for each student, with the student not being permitted to drive in a congested area. The instructor and the student will get to know each other’s expectations and abilities. Have a designated route, but don’t hesitate to deviate from the route if it appears to be causing problems for the student. An approved Kentucky Department of Education score sheet shall be used for course documentation which will tell you where the students’ capabilities and deficiencies are, in addition to what components are being graded. Share the results with the students, and if needed, inform them this is just the beginning and they will be provided additional opportunities to improve.

\*\*A driver trainer may allow three (3) or four (4) students on a bus and allow them to each drive at fifteen (15) to twenty (20) minute intervals, however, all students shall be provided the one (1) hour minimum behind the wheel training. By using the rotation method of instruction, each driver will see the other drivers operate the bus, and can learn by observation. It is recommended



1 that no more than four (4) students be on a bus at a time, as the intent of the training will be  
2 circumvented.

3

#### 4 **Chapter 6-Pupil Behavior Management**

5 This training is a two (2) hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the driver's  
6 leadership and communication abilities, establishing a safe atmosphere, applying behavior  
7 techniques, and recognizing security issues. The instructor is urged to role play, use videos and  
8 give the student a concrete approach to discipline. Tell the students what is expected and practice  
9 the techniques and responses with them. Local board discipline policy should be thoroughly  
10 covered during this class.

11

#### 12 **Vehicle Operation Part II – (Behind the Wheel)**

13 This training is a one-hour minimum requirement of behind-the-wheel instruction for each  
14 student. At this time, the driver trainer should have a good idea of the students' abilities, and  
15 more difficult maneuvers should be practiced. An approved KDE score sheet will be used for  
16 documentation which will tell you where the students' capabilities and deficiencies are. In  
17 addition to what components are being graded. Share the results with the students.

18

#### 19 **Chapter 7-Loading and Unloading**

20 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement for loading and unloading, which is a vital  
21 section of the training curriculum, and should be understood by all students. The material should  
22 be covered before permitting a driver to drive the Bus Route Identification part of the course.  
23 Extreme care should be given to this vital material, and it is not unreasonable to require 100% on  
24 the end of chapter test, along with full memorization of the steps and procedures.

25

#### 26 **Bus Route Identification-(Behind-the-Wheel)**

27 This training is a two (2) hour minimum requirement for each student. This is a vital part of  
28 "Behind-the-Wheel" training. The majority of student injuries and deaths occur while loading or  
29 unloading. A student can be failed or sent back for remedial training if the driver trainer deems it  
30 necessary.

31

1 **Chapter 8- Extra-Curricular Activities**

2 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the necessary  
3 information needed in planning a field trip, how to handle emergencies, and the responsibilities  
4 of the various leaders involved in trips.

5  
6 **Chapter 9 – Transporting Students with Special Needs**

7 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement. This chapter will cover the importance of  
8 communication, identify characteristics and behaviors of students with special needs, describe  
9 the loading and unloading procedures, and describe student management techniques.

10  
11 **Vehicle Operation Part III– (Behind the Wheel)**

12 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement of Behind-the-Wheel instruction for each  
13 student. This is the third and final segment of “Vehicle Operation.” If the student is  
14 unsatisfactory in any area, you have the authority to spend more time on the students’  
15 weakness(es). It may take more time for some students than others to master the skills, but allow  
16 the student every opportunity to develop into a safe driver.

17  
18 **Chapter 10 - First Aid**

19 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement. The area of “first aid” provides basic  
20 information and KDE recommends all school bus drivers receive first aid classes taught by a  
21 trained professional, such as school nurses, persons certified by the American Red Cross, or  
22 other nationally recognized organizations. All aspects of this chapter will need to be covered in  
23 addition to any outside lessons.

24  
25 **Chapter 11 – Commercial Driver’s License (CDL)**

26 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement. This chapter pertains to all persons holding  
27 a CDL and all aspects of the chapter need to be covered.

28  
29 **Vehicle Control at Speed Parts I and II**

1 This training is a one (1) hour minimum requirement for each student. The driver trainer has the  
2 authority to determine when a student has mastered each part of the “Behind-the-Wheel”  
3 training.

4  
5 **\*\*A driver trainer should never certify any student that doesn’t meet the qualifications.**

6  
7 **50 Question Test**

8 All students must take the “50 Question” test. No other test may take the place of the Kentucky  
9 Department of Education required test. You may also want to give your student an additional test  
10 that is directed toward your school district’s policies.

11  
12 **Diploma**

13 Present the driver with a “Diploma.” This diploma represents the completion of the core  
14 curriculum. A copy of this diploma should be kept in the driver’s file to authenticate all training  
15 has taken place.

16  
17 **CDL Skills Test**

18 The student should make an appointment to take the “CDL Skills” test, if they have not already  
19 done so. The student should be able to obtain their CDL on the day of testing or no later than the  
20 next working day. A copy of the student student’s CDL shall be placed in the driver’s file.

21 **\*\*\*Do not release the student unless you know they are safe. \*\*\***

22  
23 **School Bus Driver Certification**

24 The school bus driver data shall be submitted to the Kentucky Department of Education’s (KDE)  
25 online system after the driver has received their CDL license. No data is to be entered until all  
26 training, pre-employment checks, and CDL license have been completed. No one shall be  
27 allowed to drive Kentucky school children until KDE’s database and the driver training file have  
28 been properly completed. This is what is required to certify a school bus driver. A driver trainer  
29 allowing a driver to drive without being properly certified may lose their certification.

30

1 Prior to submitting the data, be sure to gather the following information: CDL Driver’s License  
2 Last name, First name, Middle Name, License #, DOB, Certification Date, and CDL Expiration  
3 Date. All this information must match the Commercial Driver’s License, which is how KDE is  
4 notified if a driver becomes inactive or suspended.

5  
6 **Driver Review**

7 Driver review I, II, and III take place after certification. If a driver review is not completed in the  
8 timeframe provided, the driver is no longer certified to drive. These reviews are important to  
9 assess the suitability of the driver once the training has been completed and when the driver is no  
10 longer under the complete supervision of a driver trainer.

11  
12 **Driver review I - To be completed within five working days of completion of the core  
13 curriculum.**

14 This is a two (2) hour minimum requirement for each driver and is a review of everything that  
15 has been covered. At a minimum, the “Basic Driving Skills” on the Review Score Sheet must be  
16 covered. This is typically the last time the driver trainer has to observe the student before he/she  
17 drives with children.

18  
19 **Driver Review II**

20 This is a two (2) hour minimum requirement for each driver and must be completed after 30 days  
21 and within 45 days of completing the Driver Review I, or after 45 days of the start of school if  
22 the driver was trained during the summer. This review should be conducted with students on the  
23 bus, if possible. Check all required areas on the Review Score Sheet, in addition to any other  
24 requirements a district may have. If the student’s driving performance is acceptable, no  
25 additional documentation is required to the Kentucky Department of Education (KDE); however,  
26 this form must be added to the student’s training records. If your student’s performance is  
27 unacceptable, the district must determine the next course of action. If termination is decided, the  
28 date of termination must be submitted to KDE’s online database.

29  
30 **Driver Review III**

- 1 This is a one (1) hour minimum requirement for each student and is to be completed within three
- 2 (3) to six (6) months of the Driver Review II. The Driver Review III shall be done with students
- 3 on the bus. The proper score sheet shall be completed and will become part of the driver's file.

DRAFT

1 **CHAPTER 1**  
2 **KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS**  
3

4  
5 **OBJECTIVES**

- 6 • Understand state laws and regulations to legally operate a school bus.
- 7 • Gain knowledge and understanding of the daily demands and responsibilities required of  
8 a school bus driver.
- 9 • Be alert of the responsibilities involving local transportation policies and regulations.

10  
11 **Note to Instructor: Print a copy of all laws and regulations mentioned below for the**  
12 **students. You may add other laws and regulations you feel are important for them to know.**  
13 **They can be printed from the [Kentucky General Assembly website](#).**

14  
15 **INTRODUCTION**

16 It is not the purpose of this unit to cover all relevant laws and regulations. We will only discuss  
17 those pertaining to a school bus driver. There are many other laws, especially traffic laws, which  
18 you should know and obey. You should also be aware of the policies and procedures adopted by  
19 your local board of education.

20  
21 Let's discuss some of the laws and regulations that are most important to you as a school bus  
22 driver. We will begin with the statutes. Each of these can be printed from the [Kentucky General](#)  
23 [Assembly](#) website to ensure the most up to date version is utilized.

24  
25 **STATUTES**

26 **KRS 156.160 – Promulgation of Administrative Regulations by the Kentucky Board of**  
27 **Education.**

28 This statute provides the Kentucky Board of Education (KBE) the authority to regulate the  
29 transportation of students.

30  
31 **KRS 158.110 – Transportation of Pupils.**

1 This statute states, in relevant part, “Boards of education may provide transportation from their  
2 general funds or otherwise for any pupil of any grade to the nearest school to the pupil's  
3 residence within the district if the pupil does not live within a reasonable walking distance to  
4 such nearest school of appropriate grade level.” This means pupil transportation is permissive  
5 and not required for a school district. Most school districts provide transportation, however,  
6 some do not due to their size and distance from schools. This regulation also allows school  
7 districts to have walking zones, but does not regulate the size of the walking zone as each school  
8 district is different in terrain and traffic.

9

10 **KRS 161.185 – Certified or classified staff member to accompany students on school-**  
11 **sponsored or endorsed trips — Exceptions.**

12 This means someone other than the school bus driver shall accompany the students on the school  
13 bus during trips. An exception to this would be if the coach was also the bus driver. The person  
14 accompanying the students would typically know the students and can help control the students.  
15 There should be an adult accompanying the students on each school bus utilized during the trip.

16

17 KRS Chapter 189 are laws pertaining specifically to the road. Below are a few of the laws that as  
18 a driver, you need to be aware of.

19

20 **KRS 189.300 – Vehicles to keep to right.**

21 This statute allows passing of other vehicles. Therefore, a driver is not allowed to stop their bus  
22 to block the other lanes to load or unload students. The statute states, in relevant part, “The  
23 overtaking vehicle shall return to the proper traffic lane as soon as practicable and, if the passing  
24 vehicle enters the oncoming traffic lane, before coming within two hundred (200) feet of any  
25 approaching vehicle.”

26

27 **KRS 189.340 – Overtaking vehicles, bicycles, or electric low-speed scooters; traffic lanes;**  
28 **following vehicles; exemption for commercial motor vehicle platoon trailing vehicle.**

29 Periodically you may encounter bicycles while on your routes. This statute states, in relevant  
30 part, “Vehicles overtaking a bicycle or electric low-speed scooter proceeding in the same  
31 direction shall: . . . If there is only one (1) lane for traffic proceeding in the same direction, pass  
32 to the left of the bicycle or electric low-speed scooter at a distance of not less than three (3) feet

1 between any portion of the vehicle and the bicycle and maintain that distance until safely past the  
2 overtaken bicycle or electric low-speed scooter. If space on the roadway is not available to have  
3 a minimum distance of three (3) feet between the vehicle and the bicycle or electric low-speed  
4 scooter, then the driver of the passing vehicle shall use reasonable caution in passing the bicyclist  
5 or electric low-speed scooter operator.”

6  
7 It also states in Subsection (2)(b), “The driver of a motor vehicle may drive to the left of the  
8 center of a roadway, including when a no-passing zone is marked in accordance with subsection  
9 (6) of this section, to pass a person operating a bicycle or electric low-speed scooter only if the  
10 roadway to the left of the center is unobstructed for a sufficient distance to permit the driver to  
11 pass the person operating the bicycle or electric low-speed scooter safely and avoid interference  
12 with oncoming traffic. This paragraph does not authorize driving on the left side of the center of  
13 the roadway when otherwise prohibited under state law.” Subsection 6 states, “The  
14 commissioner of highways is hereby authorized to determine those portions of any highway  
15 where overtaking and passing or driving to the left of the roadway would be especially hazardous  
16 and may by appropriate signs or markings on the roadway indicate the beginning and end of such  
17 zones, and when such signs or markings are in place and clearly visible to an ordinarily  
18 observant person, every driver of a vehicle shall obey the directions thereof, except as provided  
19 for in subsection (2)(b) of this section.”

20 Just because you can pass the bicycle by law, does not mean you should. You must take into  
21 consideration road and weather conditions. Use extreme caution and remember you are  
22 transporting students. Safety is always the number one priority.

23  
24 **KRS 189.345 – Prohibitions against driving on left side of roadway.**

25 This statute should be remembered when utilizing the previous statute. If you cannot see if traffic  
26 is coming from the other side, do not pass. The statute states, in relevant part, “No vehicle shall  
27 be driven on the left side of the roadway under the following conditions: When approaching or  
28 upon the crest of a grade or a curve in the highway where the operator's view is obstructed within  
29 such distance as to create a hazard in the event another vehicle might approach from the opposite  
30 direction”.



1 **KRS 189.370 – Passing Stopped School or Church Bus Prohibited; Application to Properly**  
2 **Marked Vehicles; Rebuttable Presumption as To Identity of Violator.**

3 One of the biggest issues school buses have with traffic, is the illegal passing of school buses.  
4 This statute spells out when an illegal pass has occurred. It states, in relevant part, “If any school  
5 or church bus used in the transportation of children is stopped upon a highway for the purpose of  
6 receiving or discharging passengers, with the stop arm and signal lights activated, the operator of  
7 a vehicle approaching from any direction shall bring his vehicle to a stop and shall not proceed  
8 until the bus has completed receiving or discharging passengers and has been put into motion.  
9 The stop requirement provided for in this section shall not apply to vehicles approaching a  
10 stopped bus from the opposite direction upon a highway of four (4) or more lanes.” This means if  
11 there are 3 lanes, all vehicles in all directions must stop. If there are four or more lanes, only the  
12 vehicles following the bus must stop.  
13

14 **KRS 189.375 – School or Church Bus Signaling Device; Use; Stopping Regulation.**

15 This statute explains the requirements for stopping a bus and using the flashing lights and the  
16 stop arm. These steps need to be followed each and every time. The statute states, in relevant  
17 part, the following: “Prior to stopping the school bus for the purpose of receiving or discharging  
18 school children, the driver shall activate the amber flashing signal lamps. Once the bus comes to  
19 a complete stop, the driver shall extend the stop arm and activate the red flashing signal lights  
20 prior to opening the door so it shall be plainly visible to traffic approaching from both directions  
21 that the bus is in the process of receiving or discharging passengers. No driver shall stop a school  
22 or church bus for receiving or discharging passengers in a no passing zone which does not afford  
23 reasonable visibility to approaching motor vehicles from both directions unless a "School Bus  
24 Stop Ahead" sign has been installed a reasonable distance before that spot in the roadway. No  
25 driver shall stop a school or church bus for the purpose of receiving passengers from or  
26 discharging passengers to the opposite side of the road on a highway of four (4) or more lanes. . .  
27 .”  
28

29 **KRS 189.378 – Funeral processions.**

30 Drivers are often unaware of what the requirements are for funeral processions. This statute not  
31 only provides guidance as to the right-of-way laws, but also states, “Any person who violates

1 this section shall be guilty of a Class B misdemeanor”. It is important to know when you can or  
2 cannot pass vehicles during a funeral procession. “A person who drives a vehicle that is not part  
3 of a funeral procession shall not drive the vehicle between the vehicles of the funeral procession  
4 or otherwise interfere with the progress of the procession, except when:

5 (a) The person is authorized to do so by a police or safety officer . . . .”  
6

7 **KRS 189.450 - Stopping, standing, parking, or repairing vehicle on roadway or shoulders**  
8 **of highway.**

9 Section 5 of this statute dictates where a vehicle may not stop, to include, but not limited to,  
10 within an intersection or on a crosswalk, at any place where official signs prohibit stopping or  
11 parking, within thirty (30) feet upon the approach to any flashing beacon, stop sign, or traffic  
12 control signal located at the side of a roadway and within fifteen (15) feet of a fire hydrant.  
13

14 **KRS 189.540 – Regulation for School Buses; Operator Required to Have Commercial**  
15 **Driver’s License with School Bus Endorsement.**

16 This statute states school bus drivers are to follow the state guidelines for having received a  
17 CDL.  
18

19 **KRS 189.550 – Vehicles Used for Transporting Children to Stop At Railroad Crossings.**

20 School buses “shall stop their vehicles before crossing any railroad when tracks are at the same  
21 level of the roadway. The stop shall be made not less than fifteen (15) feet nor more than fifty  
22 (50) feet from the nearest track over which the highway crosses, except where the crossing is  
23 protected by gates or a flagman employed by the railroad. After making the stop, the operator  
24 shall open the service door and carefully look in each direction and listen for approaching trains  
25 or other on-track equipment before proceeding. If visibility is impaired at the required distance  
26 for stopping under this section, the operator may allow the vehicle to slowly roll forward for the  
27 purpose of gaining the visibility necessary to safely cross the railroad tracks.”  
28

29 **REGULATIONS**

30 This next area discusses the regulations pertaining directly to school bus drivers.  
31

1 **702 KAR 5:010 – Pupil Transportation: Technical Assistance and Monitoring.**

2 It is imperative all drivers receive the proper training and the training files are complete and in  
3 compliance. This regulation states, in relevant part, “The Department of Education may make  
4 inspections of bus driver training records. If a school bus driver training record is found to be out  
5 of compliance, the department may decertify a driver whose training records are out of  
6 compliance until proper corrections are made.”

7  
8 **702 KAR 5:030 – Pupil Transportation.**

9 Kentucky school bus driver are to receive initial and annual training. This regulation outlines that  
10 the annual training shall be at least eight (8) hours.

11  
12 **702 KAR 5:080 – Bus Drivers’ Qualifications, Responsibilities, and Training.**

13 This regulation is the longest regulation for pupil transportation and most pertinent to school bus  
14 drivers. It outlines the background and motor vehicle checks, drug and alcohol testing, physical  
15 requirements, training requirements and many other requirements that drivers must follow.

16  
17 **702 KAR 5:150- Transportation of Pre-School Children.**

18 This statute pertains to three and four year olds. It states, “each school bus transporting three (3)  
19 and four (4) year old children [are] to be staffed with a minimum of one (1) driver assistant who  
20 is qualified and trained to assist in the transportation of three (3) and four (4) year old children.”

21  
22 **FEDERAL MOTOR CARRIER SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (FMCSA)**

23 In addition to state laws and regulations, there are also federal laws a commercial driver must  
24 follow. One of those laws is the Mobile Phone Restriction. The FMCSA restricts the use of all  
25 hand-held mobile devices by drivers of commercial motor vehicles (CMVs). This rulemaking  
26 restricts a CMV driver from holding a mobile device to make a call, or dialing by pressing more  
27 than a single button.

28  
29 **Fines and Penalties** – Using a hand-held mobile phone while driving a CMV can result in  
30 driver disqualification. Penalties can be up to \$2,750 for drivers and up to \$11,000 for

1 employers who allow or require drivers to use a hand-held communications device while  
2 driving.

3  
4 **Disqualification** - Multiple violations of the prohibition of using a hand-held mobile phone  
5 while driving a CMV can result in a driver disqualification by FMCSA. Multiple violations  
6 of State laws prohibiting use of a mobile phone while driving a CMV is a serious traffic  
7 violation that could result in a disqualification by a State for drivers required to have a  
8 Commercial Driver's License.

### 9 10 **EMPLOYEE DRUG AND ALCOHOL AWARENESS TRAINING**

11 **Note to Instructor: The [FMCSA website](#) has brochures and guides you may utilize during**  
12 **this training. Be sure to provide the drivers with a paper copy of the district's policy.**

13  
14 Each board employee who possesses a commercial driver's license must receive a minimum of  
15 one (1) hour of training in drug and alcohol awareness. Following is the outline for this training,  
16 along with a drug handout from the FMCSA website.

17  
18 CFR 49 Part 382 is the FMCSA regulation which pertains to CDL drivers and controlled  
19 substances and alcohol testing. School districts may have stricter guidelines than what is required  
20 by federal law.

21  
22 The purpose of employee training is to ensure you understand the following:

- 23 a. the performance impacts of drug and alcohol abuse;
- 24 b. the expected standards of employee conduct and the penalties for violation of the policy;
- 25 c. how substance abuse can affect the workplace in terms of economic loss, vehicle safety and  
26 incidents, workplace attitudes and morals, productivity, and equipment reliability;
- 27 d. how the physiological and psychological effects of drugs endanger health and the work  
28 environment, with particular emphasis on alcohol, marijuana, methamphetamines and  
29 cocaine;
- 30 e. knowing what Employee Assistance Program (EAP) services are available;
- 31 f. the general procedures for specimen collection for drug testing;

- 1 g. knowing that impaired job performance may lead to a request for a urine specimen for
- 2 reasonable suspicion testing;
- 3 h. knowing where to go for assessment and referral for drug or alcohol abuse for themselves,
- 4 co- workers, or family members;
- 5 i. understanding the principal of confidentiality and how it applies to the drug and alcohol
- 6 policy;
- 7 j. an appreciation of their role in creating a workforce value system which actively supports the
- 8 concept of a drug-free workplace;
- 9

DRAFT

1 **CHAPTER 2**

2 **DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS**

3 **OBJECTIVES**

4 To give students an overview of their responsibilities while driving a school bus.

- 5 • Starting and stopping the bus.
- 6 • Parking the bus.
- 7 • Type D Bus differences.
- 8 • Defensive driving.
- 9 • Distracted driving.
- 10 • Night time driving.
- 11 • Traffic control devices and signs.

12

13 **Note to Instructors:** To prepare for this lesson, you will want to have pictures of the danger  
14 zone area, mirror grid, and the instrument panel. Once you have taught this class, take students  
15 onto a bus in order to show them the components of the instrument panel. Allow them to sit in  
16 the seat, feel how to adjust the seat, and adjust the mirrors. Show them where the district's mirror  
17 grid can be found and help them become familiar with the bus.

18

19 **PERFORMANCE STANDARDS:**

20 Drivers will demonstrate their ability to apply all the knowledge and skills gained during the  
21 instructional phase of this unit by successfully completing a minimum proficiency of 80% or  
22 more on the written exam.

23

1 **INTRODUCTION**

2 School bus drivers have been entrusted with a most precious cargo – our children. A great  
3 responsibility is assumed by an individual who becomes a school bus driver. The purpose of this  
4 unit is to give the school bus driver the knowledge and skills necessary to safely transport our  
5 most precious cargo. When applied, each area helps create a good defensive driver.

6

7 **GETTING READY TO DRIVE**

8 There are several tasks which a driver must complete in order to get ready to drive a school bus.

9 To many of you, these might seem very simple. After all, doesn't everybody know how to start a  
10 motor vehicle? There is more than starting the vehicle to get ready to drive. We will discuss all  
11 the little things which must be considered in order to properly drive a school bus. If you take care  
12 of the little things, the big things will take care of themselves.

13

14 **The Driver**

15 **Driver Wellness**

16 A driver needs to be in good mental and physical health before getting behind the wheel of a  
17 school bus. Ensuring they are in top performing condition will allow a driver to be more alert and  
18 capable of assisting students in an emergency. Three areas that can affect mental and physical  
19 health are nutrition, exercise, and sleep.

20

21 **Nutrition**

22 As a driver, spending time on the road can make it difficult to make healthy choices when it is  
23 time to eat, and proper nutrition can be a struggle. Poor nutrition can cause additional health  
24 issues, such as stress, which can affect your performance. Pre-planning, watching your portion  
25 sizes, and swapping soda for water, can make a major difference in your health. In today's world  
26 of convenience, it is easier than ever to make healthier choices. While in between routes, it is  
27 easy to go to the vending machine or stop at a fast food restaurant, but consider carrying a lunch  
28 with pre-washed and pre-cut fruits and vegetables, bagged lettuce and spinach, protein bars and  
29 drinks, almonds, and granola bars. These are great sources of nutrition and energy. Fast food is  
30 often full of calories and carbohydrates which can cause you to feel sluggish and tired.

31

1 **Exercise**

2 Exercise is another way to eliminate stress by helping you maintain your mental and physical  
3 health. As a school bus driver, you may be able to exercise before or after a route, but sitting for  
4 long periods of time can still cause issues. Getting out of the driver’s seat and taking a short walk  
5 can help revitalize and refresh your body.

6  
7 Exercise prevents sugar from accumulating in the blood by triggering muscles to take more  
8 glucose from the bloodstream to use for energy. Other benefits of exercise include reducing risk  
9 of developing diabetes; better sleep; lower blood pressure; weight control; strengthening of  
10 bones and lungs, and assisting in the prevention of diseases.

11  
12 **Fatigue**

13 According to the AAA Foundation for Traffic Safety, the percentage of crashes involving  
14 drowsiness is nearly eight times higher than federal estimates indicate. Not getting enough sleep  
15 not only puts you at risk, but everyone on the road and every student on your school bus. The  
16 definition of fatigue is extreme tiredness resulting from mental or physical exertion or illness.  
17 The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention says that 35 percent of U.S. drivers sleep less  
18 than the recommended minimum of seven hours daily. Getting 6 hours of sleep or less, puts you  
19 in the deprived category and quadruples the risk of having an accident.

20  
21 Drowsy driving is one of the leading causes of accidents and is the equivalent to drunk driving.  
22 Drivers who fall asleep behind the wheel, cannot take any evasive action to engage the brakes.  
23 Sleep loss accumulates into sleep debt. You must sleep longer and deeper over several days to  
24 make up for the lack of sleep.

25  
26 Warning signs of drowsy driving include yawning or blinking frequently, irritability, impatience,  
27 difficulty in remembering how far you have traveled or what you have recently passed, missing  
28 bus stops, hitting rumble strips, drifting from your lane, and nodding off.

29  
30 Factors that lead to fatigue include sleep deprivation, poor nutrition, constant stress, medications,  
31 and general health. Fatigue causes increased reaction time, often leading to the impairment of



1 attention and mental processes for making crucial decisions regarding speed and distance  
2 calculations, greatly increasing the risk of a crash.

3  
4 Avoid medicines that make you drowsy. When seeing a doctor, always inform them you are a  
5 school bus driver so they can prescribe a medication that will not make you drowsy. If your  
6 illness requires you to take a prescription that may cause drowsiness, have the doctor remove you  
7 from work until you no longer need the medication.

8 In addition to health and wellness, being knowledgeable of, and understanding the state highway  
9 laws, local rules and regulations is important, as it sets you up for success and allows you to be a  
10 safer driver. To help keep you and your passengers safe, it is important to know general  
11 maintenance procedures of the bus, incident and emergency procedures, defensive driving, and  
12 basic first aid. You must also be able to correctly and safely perform all driving maneuvers and  
13 operate all equipment (including emergency equipment). In this chapter we will discuss the  
14 driving fundamentals and you will soon be able to put them all into practice.

15  
16 Lastly, and just as important, is your attitude. Often overlooked, attitude has the greatest  
17 influence on a person's driving performance. While not usually difficult to correct, it is probably  
18 the most difficult condition to recognize. The defensive driver must constantly check to make  
19 sure he/she is alert; thinking positively; concentrating on the job at hand; and is in control of  
20 his/her emotions.

21  
22 How many times, while driving your car, have you day dreamed or thought about previous or  
23 future conversations? Have you had an argument BEFORE you start driving and gotten into the  
24 car angry? These types of situations must be put out of your mind when driving because you  
25 become a dangerous driver by not having your full attention on the road. As a professional  
26 school bus driver, you now have a greater responsibility to not only yourself, but the students  
27 you will have as passengers. You must be in proper control of the bus.

28  
29 Knowing yourself is one of the most important factors in developing good eating, exercising and  
30 sleeping habits. You are unique, and what works for you might not work for another. Be the best  
31 and safest driver that you can be behind the wheel. Make good choices and remember that when

1 taking great care of yourself, you also are taking great care of everyone that shares the road with  
2 you.

3

#### 4 **THE BUS**

5 When driving a school bus, drivers will be handling a vehicle that is much larger than the vehicle  
6 they are accustomed to driving.

7

8 **Instructor Note:** Ask the following questions:

9 What are some of the similarities between a car and a school bus?

10 (Answer: driver must obey rules of road, has same mechanical parts – motor, brakes, etc.)

11 What are some of the differences between a car and a school bus?

12 (Answer: wider turning radius, greater stopping distance, handling is changed by size and  
13 weight, etc.)

14

15 **The major differences between a car and a school bus are:**

- 16 • A bus is longer and heavier.
- 17 • A bus is higher and wider, requiring more clearance than that of a car.
- 18 • A bus has slower acceleration.
- 19 • A bus requires longer stopping distance.
- 20 • Bus drivers must rely more on mirrors for adequate rear, side and, in some instances, front  
21 views.
- 22 • Buses have a pivot point when turning which causes the rear of the bus to swing wide out of  
23 its lane into the next lane.

24

25 There are some advantages associated with driving an oversized vehicle such as a school bus.

26 The height gives a better view of traffic ahead and a better chance to avoid incidents. Other  
27 drivers can see you better and the height offers protection in case of an incident.

28

29 The disadvantages are that the vehicle is more susceptible to tipping and has a greater chance of  
30 hitting an overhead obstruction. We can compensate for that additional height by being alert,  
31 adjusting speed, changing lane position and using added caution. We must watch for traffic

1 conditions twelve (12) to fifteen (15) seconds ahead of time.

2

3 The weight of a full-sized, empty bus is approximately 20,000-26,000 pounds, and can weigh up  
4 to 43,000 pounds when fully loaded with passengers. This weight effects our ability to stop and  
5 we should be careful to avoid panic stops. To avoid panic stops, we must plan, slow down sooner  
6 and drive defensively.

7

8 The width of a bus is 96” – two (2) feet wider than a standard car and occupying 1/3 more lane  
9 space than a standard-sized vehicle. To compensate for added width, we must plan and adjust  
10 speed accordingly.

11

12 We must be fully aware of all the characteristics of each bus we drive, because even though all  
13 buses are similar, they have individual characteristics for which we must compensate. A school  
14 bus driver’s prime responsibility is to deliver our most precious cargo safely to their destinations.  
15 Knowing how the bus handles and knowing its characteristics, will enable us to accomplish this  
16 task.

17

18 We will first go over the basics of the school bus and then the differences between a Type C bus  
19 and a Type D bus.

20

## 21 **CONTROLS OF THE SCHOOL BUS**

22 From the driver’s seat, you will be able to see and monitor various aspects of the school bus  
23 operation. The controls are in the driver’s area of the school bus and are standard for school  
24 buses in Kentucky. These must be monitored and understood for safe, efficient and economical  
25 operation. It is very important that you fully understand the function of the controls and how to  
26 read each of them.

27

28 Located on the instrument panel, in front of the driver, are lights and gauges that indicate the  
29 status of various vehicle functions. To the driver’s left, are switches which control the lights and  
30 fans. The service door control is located to the right or left of the driver. The parking brake and  
31 transmission shift levers are located to the right of the driver.

1 At a minimum, Kentucky school buses will have these instruments in the chassis instrument  
2 panel:

- 3 • speedometer, showing miles per hour;
- 4 • odometer, showing accrued miles;
- 5 • oil pressure gauges;
- 6 • water temperature gauges;
- 7 • volt meter, showing alternator voltage output;
- 8 • low air gauge/buzzer and light;
- 9 • fuel gauge;
- 10 • high beam headlamp indicator;
- 11 • turn signal indicator lights;
- 12 • anti-lock brake system (ABS) light;

13

14 Drivers must be aware of the instruments and what the reading on each of them means.

15

### 16 **OIL PRESSURE LIGHT OR GAUGE**

17 The oil pressure light/gauge indicates if there is enough pressure to circulate oil in the engine. If  
18 there is insufficient pressure, the warning light will flash red. The gauge will register the oil  
19 pressure in pounds per square inch.

20

### 21 **WATER TEMPERATURE LIGHT OR GAUGE**

22 The temperature light/gauge indicates proper temperature of water circulating in engine. Water is  
23 too hot if the indicator light is showing red or the gauge registers 220 or above.

24

### 25 **VOLTMETER (ALTERNATOR LIGHT)**

26 The voltmeter (alternator light) indicates if there is enough energy to start the engine and run the  
27 electrical system. If there is not enough energy, the alternator light will show red or the gauge  
28 will register on discharge side with less than 12 volts. On some buses, the voltmeter will be  
29 digital.

30

31 When you turn the key, the voltmeter will show the amount of charge in the battery. Once the

1 bus is started, the voltmeter will show how many volts the alternator is putting out. In both cases,  
2 the voltmeter should read 12-14 volts.

3

#### 4 **LOW AIR BUZZER OR GAUGE**

5 The air pressure gauge indicates the amount of air pressure available. The low air pressure  
6 buzzer will sound if the pressure drops below 60 pounds per square inch. A red light will also  
7 turn on indicating low air pressure or loss of hydraulic brake booster power.

8

#### 9 **FUEL GAUGE**

10 The fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the tank. A red light indicates there is low fuel.  
11 Fuel gauge must show adequate supply of fuel to complete trip.

12

#### 13 **MIRRORS**

14 The school bus is equipped with mirrors to assist the driver in seeing the areas around the bus.  
15 One of the characteristics of school bus construction is that it produces blind spots and danger  
16 zones. Many of the serious incidents involving school buses occur in these danger zones. Mirrors  
17 have been added to the school bus to assist the driver in seeing these areas. A driver must  
18 understand how to properly use the mirrors in order to safely operate the school bus.

19

20 The first and foremost action a driver must take when using the mirrors is to ensure they are  
21 properly adjusted so that all areas can be monitored, and the mirrors can be easily seen from the  
22 driver's seat. Mirrors should be positioned and adjusted so that the driver can monitor all areas  
23 without moving his/her head. When properly adjusted, a driver will be able to monitor the  
24 mirrors by only shifting their eyes. Mirrors must be checked as part of the visual scanning  
25 process that the driver follows in reading the road.

26

27 There are currently seven (7) mirrors on all buses. Mirrors will be different on each bus,  
28 depending upon the year of manufacture. There may be a West Coast mirror and two (2) convex  
29 mirrors on each side, or there may be a set of Euro-Style mirrors with two (2) convex mirrors on  
30 each side which could bring the total of mirrors to nine (9), counting the inside rear view mirror.

31

1 **A school bus is equipped with the following mirrors:**

- 2 • Interior rear-view mirror (student mirror)
  - 3 ○ mounted above the windshield
- 4 • West coast mirrors
  - 5 ○ mounted on the left so that the driver has an unobstructed view of it through the
  - 6 driver's window
  - 7 ○ mounted on the right so that the driver has a good view of the mirror through the
  - 8 right side of the windshield.

9 Or

- 10 • Euro-Style Mirror
  - 11 ○ Four (4) convex mirrors and they may be round, square or rectangular.
    - 12 ▪ One (1) crossover mirror mounted on each front fender.
    - 13 ▪ One (1) positioned on each side to give a view down the left and right
    - 14 sides of the bus, called fender mirrors.

15  
16 **DIFFERENCES OF TYPE D VS. TYPE C (CONVENTIONAL BUSES)**

17 There are many differences between Type D and conventional buses. There are two Type D  
18 buses, forward control and rear engine. One of the major differences is visibility in relation to  
19 mirrors, side windows, windshields and maneuverability. In operating a Type D vehicle, the  
20 driver will notice almost immediately that visibility is greater due to the width of the windshield.

21  
22 **MIRRORS**

23 The driver of a Type D bus does not have as clear a view of the windows down the left side. The  
24 mirrors can be difficult to adjust in order to achieve full view. The driver will need assistance in  
25 the adjustment due to the height of the mirrors.

26  
27 **FORWARD CONTROL TURNING RADIUS**

28 The forward control bus has a shorter wheelbase than the conventional bus so turns can be made  
29 easier in close areas. The wheelbase and rear wheels must be considered while making turns and  
30 while rounding curves. The forward control bus is generally easier to maneuver in tight places.  
31 Making left and right turns can be achieved with less room available, which decreases incident

1 potential.

2

### 3 **BACKING**

4 In backing the Type D bus, the turning radius is smaller, and care must be taken when backing  
5 and turning the wheel. You must remember that you have an overhang in front of the axle and in  
6 the rear. Be aware that the right or left corner will strike any object near the bus, if the driver  
7 turns the wheel in excess of what is required.

8

### 9 **DRIVER'S SEAT**

10 When entering a forward control bus, it is apparent that the driver's seating arrangement is much  
11 different than in a conventional bus. The housing for the forward engine (dog house) is an  
12 obstacle. In the older forward engine buses, the dog house is not to be climbed upon for any  
13 reason. The driver must get into the driver's seat by careful maneuvering. The newer forward  
14 engine buses have a plate on the dog house that will allow the driver to step on or walk over.

15

### 16 **DISTANCE FROM STUDENTS**

17 The driver is in an isolated area on Type D buses, which creates potential problems. Student  
18 behavior is more difficult to manage because of the design of the space and the sound of the  
19 motor is loud. The driver cannot always hear the students and the students cannot always hear  
20 the driver giving instructions. The driver is restricted by space which could cause problems if  
21 he/she needs to leave his/her area quickly. The time it would take to get to a student takes longer,  
22 so the driver has to be alert to potential safety problems.

23

### 24 **FOOT POSITIONS**

25 Older Type D forward engine driver seats have little or no lateral movement. Forward and  
26 reverse movement of the driver's seat is adequate. To obtain the best possible foot position, all  
27 drivers should adhere to the following:

28

- Adjust the driver's seat to the best possible body configuration.

29

- Adjust the seat so that the right foot can reach the foot pedals for safe operation of the vehicle.

30

31

- When moving the right foot from the accelerator to the brake, lift the right foot

1 completely off the accelerator pedal and place on the brake pedal. Do not mistake the  
2 accelerator for the brake pedal.

- 3 • When depressing the brake pedal, it is recommended that only light steady pressure be  
4 applied, using the forward portion of the right foot (ball) to apply the brake.

### 6 **AIR OPERATED DOOR**

7 Type D buses are equipped with an air operated door, activated by an electrical switch located on  
8 the control panel. All air operated doors are not equipped with a delay switch. Even though this  
9 door is easier to operate, the driver must constantly be aware of passenger movement to guard  
10 against student injury.

### 12 **TURNING**

13 When turning a Type D bus, you should pull further into the intersection before turning. As with  
14 turning any vehicle, you must have your speed reduced, be in the proper lane for turning and  
15 constantly monitoring the mirrors and traffic environment.

### 17 **STOPPING DISTANCE**

18 Tests have shown no significant differences in stopping distances comparing a Type D vehicle to  
19 a conventional. In a Type D bus, the driver feels the stopping distance is longer due to the  
20 increased distance of the driver from the rear of the vehicle. Note that Type D vehicles seem to  
21 slide more than the conventional when making a panic stop.

23 NOTE: The main concern regarding the differences between conventional and Type D buses, is  
24 the change from driving one type of vehicle to the other. When a driver makes such a change,  
25 they must continually be aware of the differences as they adapt.

### 27 **MIRROR ADJUSTMENT**

28 **Note to Instructor: The mirror grid should be shown to the students. Provide the mirror**  
29 **grid on paper, and show the students where the mirrors are physically located when you**  
30 **take them to the bus to learn how to properly adjust them.**



1 As part of the pre-trip inspection, drivers must be sure to check their mirror adjustment. Mirrors  
2 are vital to the safe operation of the school bus. They must be used to safely turn, back-up, or  
3 move the bus in traffic. A driver cannot be an effective professional school bus driver without  
4 using the mirrors properly. A school bus driver should constantly be performing a visual scan,  
5 checking all mirrors at least every five (5) seconds. No movement of the bus should be made  
6 until all mirrors have been checked to ensure no child or any object is close to the bus.

7  
8 Use of mirrors is called for throughout this course. Be sure that you adjust and use them  
9 properly. You will have an opportunity to work with adjusting the mirrors later in this course.

### 10 11 **VISUAL SCAN**

12 **Note to Instructor: Show the student what a visual scan looks like. Let them see you**  
13 **constantly moving your eyes and show them what you will be looking for during training.**

14  
15 The eyes should be focused on the road ahead as well as all around the bus. The correct way to  
16 accomplish this is to:

- 17 • Keep the eyes constantly on the move to obtain the “big picture.”
- 18 • Look straight ahead. Use the left side, right side and rear-view mirrors.

### 19 20 **STEERING**

21 **Note to Instructor: To steer the bus, the driver should use the hand-over- hand method.**  
22 **Show each student what the hand-over-hand method looks like. When you go to the bus,**  
23 **allow each student to sit in the seat and try turning the wheel using hand over hand.**

24  
25 A school bus driver must be able to assume the correct steering position and make all turning  
26 maneuvers correctly and smoothly. It is vital that each school bus driver learn and perform the  
27 correct procedures necessary to prepare for making and turns. When an unusual turn or  
28 turnaround is required, the driver should use extreme caution. Added skills and judgment in  
29 making turns properly and safely are required as a result of the traffic conditions in which the  
30 school bus travels each day.

31

1 In steering the school bus, it is very important for the driver to use both hands. The correct  
2 steering position is:

- 3 1. Grip the steering wheel with both hands.
- 4 2. Hold the left hand at approximately the 9 or 10 o'clock position.
- 5 3. The right hand should be at approximately the 2 or 3 o'clock position.
- 6 4. Each hand should be located directly across from each other. Hence, 9 and 3 o'clock or  
7 10 and 2 o'clock.
- 8 5. Hands should be on the outside of the steering wheel and your thumbs on top or outside  
9 of the wheel.

10

### 11 **DANGER ZONES**

12 **Note to Instructor: Provide a copy of the danger zone area to the class. This can be found**  
13 **on the Kentucky Department of Education or the NHTSA website.**

14

15 Most injuries that involve school buses occur outside of the school bus. Drivers must exercise  
16 extreme care to ensure they do not injure or kill a child with the school bus. There are very  
17 hazardous areas around the bus – areas in which drivers have great difficulty seeing all that goes  
18 on around the bus. This is a ten foot area immediately surrounding the stopped school bus. These  
19 areas are referred to as “danger zones” or “death zones”. Drivers must have their mirrors  
20 adjusted so they can see into these areas as it is virtually impossible to see small children while  
21 in these areas/zones.

22

23 **It cannot be emphasized enough that no movement of the bus is to be made until the driver**  
24 **has checked each area for clearance.**

25

26 We have looked at the components of the bus and discussed important factors to remember. Now  
27 let's talk about bus movement.

28

1 **STARTING A SCHOOL BUS ENGINE**

2 It is necessary to properly start a school bus engine in order to safely operate the bus. Starting the  
3 engine must become a matter of routine, incorporating principles of safety and preventative  
4 practices.

5  
6 The correct sequence for starting a school bus engine is:

- 7 1. Ensure the brake is set to keep the bus from moving.
- 8 2. Apply the service brake.
- 9 3. Ensure the gear lever is in the neutral or park position.
- 10 4. Turn on the ignition key to complete electric circuits and engage the starter switch.
- 11 5. Warm up the engine at fast idle. **Do not race the engine.**
- 12 6. Review the gauges.
- 13 7. Check instruments to see they are registering properly.
  - 14 a. Voltmeter shows 12 volts plus.
  - 15 b. Oil pressure gauge registers at the middle of the gauge.
  - 16 c. Temperature gauge is at the midpoint.
  - 17 d. Fuel gauge registers full, or enough to complete the run.
  - 18 e. Air pressure gauge indicates pressure is building.

19  
20 On some occasions, especially during cold weather, the engine might be difficult to start, and the  
21 air pressure will not build as a result of ice in the airlines. Drivers can correct these problems by  
22 taking appropriate actions.

23  
24 **BUILDING AIR PRESSURE**

25 In cold weather, the driver should:

- 26 1. Start the engine.
- 27 2. Release the parking brake.
- 28 3. Depress the service brake pedal and hold it.
- 29 4. Run the engine at fast idle with the transmission in neutral.
- 30 5. When pressure reaches 120, you are to pump the brake several times.
- 31 6. Let the pressure build up again without the brake pedal being depressed.

1 7. If the air pressure does not come up to its required level, repeat process.

2

3 **SHUTTING DOWN A DIESEL ENGINE:**

4 1. Bring the bus to a full stop.

5 2. Set the parking brake.

6 3. Place the transmission in neutral.

7 4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one (1) minutes, by the clock.

8 5. After one (1) minute turn off the engine.

9 6. Remove the key from the ignition.

10

11 **GEAR SHIFTING**

12 **Note to Instructor: If your district has a hybrid or any other type of bus, be sure to go over**  
13 **the proper procedure for those buses.**

14

15 Gear shifting requires skill and practice. A driver must learn the range of speed in changing gears  
16 upward or downward, then shift without losing view of the road. School buses are equipped with  
17 a four or five speed transmission or an automatic transmission. The synchromesh transmissions  
18 have alleviated most of the gear clashing and have made shifting easier for drivers.

19

20 **The proper methods to use in operating a bus with an automatic transmission are:**

21 1. Depress the foot brake and move the selector lever into the forward or reverse position.

22 2. Release the parking brake, release the foot brake and depress the accelerator. As the  
23 speed of the bus increases, the transmission will automatically shift to the next higher  
24 gear, until reaching the cruising gear.

25 3. Downshift for additional power by depressing the accelerator toward the floor firmly. A  
26 driver can downshift manually by moving the selector lever to the next lower position.

27

28 **FOLLOWING DISTANCE/SPACE CUSHION**

29 A good defensive driver allows for adequate space between themselves and other vehicles. A  
30 school bus requires more stopping distance than a car, therefore, understanding the distance and  
31 speed of the bus is important.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

To determine the safe following distance, the driver must allow one (1) second of following distance for each ten feet (10') of vehicle length up to forty (40) mph. The driver should add one (1) second if traveling over forty (40) miles per hour. In Kentucky, all bus drivers should assume their vehicle is at least forty feet (40') long, hence, no Kentucky school bus driver should ever be closer than four (4) seconds. To apply the four (4) second rule, a driver picks a point ahead (for example: overhead bridge, post, sign, etc.). As the vehicle passes the selected point, start counting "one thousand and one, one thousand and two, etc." if you don't complete "one thousand and four" by the time the front of the bus passes the selected point, you are following too close.

Look ahead twelve (12) to fifteen (15) seconds. By scanning the road that far ahead, trouble can be seen well in advance and can often be avoided.

Definite times to adjust following distance are when:

- increasing speed
- driving on wet or icy road
- driving at night
- during adverse weather conditions
- fatigued
- following emergency vehicles
- following dual-wheeled vehicles, which may cause damage to the bus by debris thrown from between the wheels
- following two-wheeled vehicles that can stop within shorter distances
- below the 4 second rule if driving 40 mph or slower
- below the five (5) second rule if driving over 40 mph

Stay alert. Watch for signs from the driver ahead as to what he intends to do. Is their turn signal on? Are their brake lights lit? Have they been gradually drifting to the right or left as if to prepare to turn?

1 Stay ahead of the situation. Look beyond the driver ahead to see situations that may force them  
2 to act quickly and thereby become a threat to you. Slow down and touch your brakes the instant  
3 you see a hazard developing that may require you to stop or take evasive action. Failure to do  
4 this is known as “delayed braking,” and creates panic stops. A competent, professional school  
5 bus driver will rarely, if ever, have to make a panic stop. The best advice that a driver can adhere  
6 to is to stay away from other vehicles. Do not travel next to or close to any other vehicle(s),  
7 person(s) or obstacle(s) at any time unless it is necessary. Stay back. Use and apply the four (4)  
8 second minimum rule.

9

### 10 **PROPER LANE USAGE**

11 Lane usage and the position of the bus on the road are vital to the safe and efficient completion  
12 of each bus run. Drivers should not straddle lane marker lines or obstruct more than one lane. In  
13 urban areas, drivers should use the parking lane for stopping and parking.

14

15 Where there is more than one lane for traffic going in one direction, travel in the furthestmost  
16 right lane (not including parking lane), unless parking or turning left. Drive at a safe distance  
17 from other vehicles. Use the four (4) second minimum rule for following vehicles. Remain at  
18 least fifty feet (50' – 1 ¼ bus lengths) behind a bus leaving school grounds.

19 When changing lanes, look for rear approaching traffic in the new lane. Glance out the window  
20 to check any blind spots. Move your head enough to see around the blind spot by using the  
21 mirrors. On multi-lane roads, look for vehicles about to enter the new lane from the adjacent  
22 lane. Check fender and west coast mirrors to observe vehicles passing, vehicles closing in fast  
23 from the rear, and vehicles about to enter the new lane. Position the bus so that you safely and  
24 smoothly accomplish the required maneuver.

25

### 26 **BASIC ROAD RULES**

27 A thorough knowledge of highway signs, signals, markings and legal rights on the road, are  
28 necessary to be a safe school bus driver. We will now look at basic road rules that you will need  
29 to remember for everyday driving.

30

### 31 **BICYCLIST**

1 Do not honk your horn as it may scare the cyclist and cause additional road hazards. As  
2 discussed in Chapter 1, if there is only one (1) lane for traffic proceeding in the same direction,  
3 pass to the left of the bicycle at a distance of not less than three (3) feet between any portion of  
4 the vehicle and the bicycle, and maintain that distance until safely past the overtaken bicycle. If  
5 space on the roadway is not available to have a minimum distance of three (3) feet between the  
6 vehicle and the bicycle, then the driver of the passing vehicle shall use reasonable caution in  
7 passing the bicyclist.

8

## 9 **ANIMALS**

10 Slow down when entering animal crossing zones or when noting animals on, or along roadway.  
11 If an animal enters a roadway, prepare to stop or maneuver if traffic permits. Hit the animal if  
12 stopping or maneuvering would jeopardize your own safety or that of passengers, other  
13 motorists, or pedestrians.

14

## 15 **SPEED OF TRAVEL**

16 The school bus shall not be operated at a speed in excess of the posted speed. The driver shall  
17 drive the school bus in a manner that is appropriate for the conditions of the roadway, weather  
18 conditions, or other circumstances. The bus should not be driven at speeds that would make it  
19 unsafe for the bus or the passengers.

20

21 A driver should check their speed every five seconds and keep your eyes moving. Adjust your  
22 speed to that of the other traffic by accelerating, decelerating, braking and/or downshifting, but  
23 be mindful not to go over the posted speed limit.

24

25 Basic speed law:

26 1. The driver should drive at a careful and prudent speed that considers all driving  
27 conditions. Drive at no greater speed than will permit stopping the vehicle within the  
28 assured clear distance ahead.

29 2. The following are the absolute speed laws: unless posted otherwise

30 a. 70 MPH – maximum for Kentucky Interstate travel

31 b. 45 MPH – minimum on freeways

- 1 c. 45 MPH – highway construction, road work or surveying
- 2 d. 25 MPH – business, residential and park areas, unless posted otherwise
- 3 e. 25 MPH – school zones

4

## 5 **RIGHT TURN ON RED**

6 A right turn on red is not allowed in a Kentucky school bus. The benefits of making a right on  
7 red turn are far outweighed by the additional chances that a driver must take. The chances of a  
8 school bus being hit by a vehicle while turning is very high. Having a controlled green light is  
9 the best and safest way to make this turn.

10

## 11 **INTERSECTIONS**

- 12 1. Look both ways. (Just like crossing the street when walking.)
  - 13 a. Look to the left first since traffic coming from the left is closer.
  - 14 b. Look to the right.
  - 15 c. Take one more look to the left before you pull out, just in case there is something you  
16 did not see the first time.
- 17 2. Do not rely on traffic signals.
  - 18 a. Look left and right, even if other traffic has a red light or a stop sign. Someone may  
19 disobey either one.
- 20 3. Make sure you have a good view.
  - 21 a. If the view of a cross street is blocked by a building or a row of parked vehicles, edge  
22 forward slowly until visibility is clear in both directions.
  - 23 b. If traffic in one lane is blocking the view of another lane, wait until it clears. If a  
24 driver tries to look by putting the front of the bus into the other lane, they may get hit.

25

26 Crosswalks are set aside for people to cross the street. Usually they are marked with yellow or  
27 white lines and have warning signs. Most crosswalks are located at intersections. Some are in the  
28 middle of the block, especially in cities and town. While turning a corner, watch for pedestrians  
29 who are about to cross the street you are turning onto. Remember, if a driver has a green light,  
30 the pedestrian has a green light also. The law requires drivers to yield to pedestrians in the  
31 crosswalk.



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**RIGHT OF WAY**

The right-of-way rules contribute to the safe passage of the vehicles through an intersection provided each driver obeys the rules. Below are other right of way situations and rules.

**YIELD RIGHT-OF-WAY TO PEDESTRIANS:**

- A. at stop signs;
- B. at traffic signals;
- C. at crosswalks;
- D. when turning;
- E. when entering a street from a driveway or alley; and/or
- F. when meeting blind pedestrians

1. Right-of-way rules for an intersection not controlled by signs or signal devices.
  - a. Generally, drivers on single lane or two (2) lane roadways must yield the right-of-way to vehicles on divided roadways or roadways of three (3) or more lanes.
  - b. Usually, drivers on unpaved roadways must yield the right-of-way to vehicles on paved roadways.
  - c. Drivers on roadways consisting of the same number of lanes and similar surfacing must yield the right-of-way to vehicles approaching from the right which are close enough to contribute to a hazard.
  - d. Drivers who are required to yield the right-of-way may enter the intersection only if the movement can be made without interference or collision with traffic using the intersection.
2. Right-of-way at an intersection with a stop sign or yield sign.
  - a. Drivers approaching intersections controlled by stop or yield right-of-way signs must obey such signs.
  - b. After coming to a complete stop, give the right-of-way to pedestrians crossing the street.
  - c. Drivers may enter the intersection if the movement can be made without interference or collision with traffic using the intersection.

- 1 3. Right-of-way at an intersection with a signal light.
  - 2 a. After a light turns green, yield to pedestrians still crossing the street. Yield to
  - 3 pedestrians walking with a green light or a “walk” signal.
  - 4 b. A driver entering the intersection on a green light has the right-of-way.
  - 5 c. A driver approaching the intersection on a red light must stop.
  - 6 **d. A Kentucky school bus shall not turn right on red. REMEMBER: SAFETY**
  - 7 **FIRST ... SCHEDULE SECOND!!!**
  - 8 e. When a flashing red light is operating, a driver approaching the red light must stop
  - 9 before entering the intersection.
  - 10 f. Where there is a steady green arrow, yield to conflicting cars and pedestrians.
- 11 4. Procedure and right-of-way after stop are the same as at a stop sign.
  - 12 a. A flashing yellow light is a caution signal to warn drivers of a traffic hazard and
  - 13 requires a speed slow enough to avoid a collision.
- 14 5. Right-of-way when entering a roadway.
- 15 6. A vehicle entering a crossing or roadway from an alley, building, private road or driveway,
- 16 must yield to pedestrians in your path and vehicles on the roadway.
  - 17 a. A vehicle merging from an alley, driveway (including a school driveway), or building
  - 18 in a business or residential area, must stop before driving onto the crosswalk or past
  - 19 the sidewalk and must yield to any pedestrians and vehicles on the roadway.
  - 20 b. A vehicle entering a roadway or traffic lane from an angle or parallel parked position,
  - 21 or from the roadway shoulder, must yield to all vehicles close enough to contribute to
  - 22 an immediate hazard.
- 23 7. Right-of-way on left turns.
  - 24 a. A vehicle turning left at an intersection, must yield to those vehicles approaching
  - 25 from the opposite direction that are close enough to contribute to an immediate
  - 26 hazard.
  - 27 b. A vehicle turning left within an intersection or into an alley, private road, or
  - 28 driveway, must yield to pedestrians and any vehicle approaching from opposite
  - 29 direction which is within the intersection, or close enough to be an immediate hazard.
  - 30 c. Right-of-way on the approach of an emergency vehicle.
  - 31 d. The approach of an emergency vehicle using a siren and/or red light, requires other

1 vehicles to move to the right, clear of any intersections, and stop until the emergency  
2 vehicle has passed. When conditions make it impossible to move to the right, the  
3 vehicle should stop and remain stopped until the emergency vehicle has passed.  
4 Under no circumstances should a driver ever pull to the left. Emergency vehicle  
5 drivers are taught to pass on the left.  
6

### 7 **STOPPING THE SCHOOL BUS**

8 Always stop the school bus in a smooth and safe manner. The driver must always have the bus  
9 under control and know the distance required to make a smooth, safe stop, increases as the speed  
10 and weight of the bus increases.  
11

12 The normal reaction time for most drivers is  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a second. This might not seem like very much  
13 time, but even in  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a second, the bus can cover a considerable distance depending upon the  
14 speed of the bus.  
15

16 How far does a bus travel in the  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a second that it takes a driver to remove his/her foot from  
17 the accelerator and apply the brake?

- 18 • Take the first digit of the speedometer reading and add it to the total speed. This will give  
19 the reaction distance in feet.  
20

#### 21 **EXAMPLE:**

22 36 mph + 3 = 39 feet in  $\frac{3}{4}$  second (a bus is 40 feet)

23 45 mph + 4 = 49 feet in  $\frac{3}{4}$  second  
24

25 Now that the driver has the brakes on, the bus will still travel quite a distance before it can be  
26 brought to a stop. This is called “braking distance.” Braking distance varies with speed. It  
27 increases at a geometric rate as speed increases.  
28

29 To stop a bus, the driver must allow for reaction time and braking distance. A driver can allow  
30 for this by maintaining a safe following distance between the bus and the vehicle ahead.  
31

1 Drivers should always operate their bus within posted speed limits and with consideration for  
2 road and weather conditions. Be sure to drive at a speed that will permit stopping within the clear  
3 distance ahead.

4  
5 Correct stopping procedures keep down wear and tear on the tires and brake system as well as  
6 maintenance costs. To stop correctly, a school bus driver must follow these procedures:

- 7  
8 **Stopping**
- 9 1. Release the accelerator and depress the brake pedal.
  - 10 2. Apply brakes gradually by increasing the pressure.
  - 11 3. Reduce brake pressure slightly, but not completely just before coming to a stop to prevent  
12 jerking.

13  
14 There will be occasions when it will become necessary for the bus driver to stop the bus on a hill  
15 or incline. When this situation occurs, allow an extra safety margin between the bus and the  
16 vehicle ahead.

17  
18 **PARKING THE SCHOOL BUS**

19 At no time is it recommended to back a school bus out into traffic flow. This is extremely  
20 dangerous, and all options need to be explored to prevent backing the bus, this includes how the  
21 bus is parked. Drivers must be able to park so that it will not become a traffic hazard.

22  
23 During your career as a professional school bus driver, you will be required at one time or  
24 another to park the bus at an angle, perpendicular, parallel and/or on a hill.

25  
26 **Note to Instructor: By marking off distances between vehicles, using the bus and cars, show**  
27 **the drivers what each distance looks like. This will allow them to visualize what 15, 20, 30,**  
28 **40, 50 and 75 feet are. If you have room, show what 500 feet looks like (12.5 bus lengths) or**  
29 **1.5 football fields. Equating the distances to that of the bus, helps give the drivers a great**  
30 **visual.**

31  
52

1 **PARKING IS PROHIBITED:**

- 2 • on a sidewalk;
- 3 • in front of any driveway, alley, theater, emergency exit, or fire escape;
- 4 • within intersections;
- 5 • within fifteen feet (15') of fire hydrants;
- 6 • on crosswalks;
- 7 • within twenty feet (20') of crosswalks, or if none, within fifteen feet (15') of intersection
- 8 of property lines at intersection of highways;
- 9 • between safety zones and adjacent curbs;
- 10 • within thirty feet (30') of points on curb immediately at opposite ends of the safety zone,
- 11 unless a different length is indicated by official signs;
- 12 • within fifty feet (50') of the nearest rail or railroad crossing;
- 13 • within twenty feet (20') of driveway entrance to any fire station, and on the side of a
- 14 street opposite entrance to any fire station within seventy-five feet (75') of said entrance
- 15 when proper signs are posted;
- 16 • along the side, or opposite a street evacuation or obstruction, when stopping, standing or
- 17 parking would obstruct traffic;
- 18 • on highway side of a vehicle stopped or parked at the edge or curb or a street;
- 19 • upon a bridge or other elevated structure upon a highway or within a highway tunnel;
- 20 • at a place where official signs prohibit stopping;
- 21 • within five hundred feet (500') of an incident at which police officers are in attendance,
- 22 when the scene of the incident lies outside of a city or village; and/or
- 23 • more than twelve inches (12") from a curb on the main traveled part of the highway when
- 24 it is possible to park off the main traveled part of the highway outside of the city.

25  
26  
27 **NIGHT DRIVING**

28 Night driving poses a greater safety risk since drivers are unable to recognize hazards as quickly  
29 as they would during daylight hours. Being aware of how driver, roadway, and vehicle factors  
30 can affect you while driving at night, will help make you a better driver.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**Driver Factors**

A key element to safe driving is proper vision. School bus drivers should have their vision checked regularly and follow-up with a specialist if warranted. If you are prescribed corrective lenses, always wear them while operating the bus. It is important that you carry an extra set of corrective lenses with you in the event your normal pair is broken or otherwise inoperable. If you wear contact lenses, you should carry a spare set of glasses. Tinted lenses should not be worn at night, as they reduce the amount of light you need to recognize objects and road hazards quickly.

At times, drivers can be blinded momentarily by the glare of a bright light since it takes your eyes a few moments to adjust. Do not look directly at the lights of oncoming vehicles. Instead, look slightly to the right at the right lane or edge markings. If drivers approaching you do not put their low beams on, do not put your high beams on, as this could blind them momentarily and increase the likelihood of you being in an accident.

Make sure you get plenty of sleep the night before. It is not uncommon for drivers to become drowsy or fatigued at night. If you find yourself getting sleepy, pull over. Call for assistance if you have students onboard.

In an effort to help you be alert while driving, avoid heavy meals. Overeating or eating certain types of food can make you drowsy.

While you cannot control the outside environment, you have control over the inside environment. Keep cool by using whatever ventilation is at your disposal – opening the window or using the air conditioner (if equipped). On cooler days, use the heaters. Make sure the driver’s area does not become too warm as this can contribute to you becoming drowsy.

**Roadway Factors**

Poor lighting on roadways can make driving at night a challenge. Be especially aware of joggers, cyclists, and animals. Drive slower when lighting is poor. Adjust your speed so that

1 you can safely stop the bus within your sight of distance. Use your high beams when it is safe  
2 and legal to do so (when you are more than 500 feet from an approaching vehicle).

3  
4 Drivers under the influence of drugs and/or alcohol pose a safety risk to all motorists. While it is  
5 most common to encounter these types of drivers during the late night and early morning hours  
6 (11PM to 4AM), it is possible that you might encounter them at any time you are driving. Be  
7 alert and watch for drivers with erratic driving habits (inconsistent speeds, swerving in and out of  
8 lanes, and stopping for no reason at all).

### 10 **Vehicle Factors**

11 Conducting a proper pre-trip can help you address most vehicle factors. Lights are one of the  
12 most important equipment items that are used for nighttime driving.

13  
14 Be sure your headlights are clean and operational. With low beams, you can see approximately  
15 250 feet ahead. With high beams, you can see approximately 350-500 feet ahead.

16  
17 While headlights help you to see what is on the road or what is approaching, other lights on the  
18 bus help others to see you. Your reflectors, marker lights, clearance lights, taillights, and  
19 identification lights, should also be clean and operational. Each Kentucky school bus also has a  
20 strobe light at the top of the bus. This should be used in darkness and during inclement weather  
21 to allow others around the bus to see it.

22  
23 Drivers should always be sure the brake lights and turn signals are operational. They inform  
24 other drivers of your intentions. At night, they are even more important.

### 26 **DISTRACTED DRIVING**

27 A driver distraction is anything that removes the attention of a driver from their focus of  
28 driving. Whenever you are driving a vehicle and your full attention is not on the driving task,  
29 you are putting yourself, your passengers, other vehicles, and pedestrians in danger. A driver  
30 should recognize potential distractions and take necessary steps to remove or minimize those  
31 distractions. Distracted driving can cause accidents, resulting in injury, death or property

1 damage. In this section we will explore types of distractions, where they occur, potential  
2 distractions, and effects of distracted driving.

3

#### 4 **TYPES OF DISTRACTIONS**

5 There are three main types of distraction:

- 6 • Visual: taking your eyes off the road;
- 7 • Manual: taking your hands off the wheel, and
- 8 • Cognitive: taking your mind off driving.

9 A distracting activity may include one or more of these types. For example, someone reaching  
10 for and using a cellphone while driving, would be engaging in all three types of distractions in  
11 this one activity.

12

#### 13 **WHERE THEY OCCUR & EXAMPLES OF POTENTIAL DISTRACTIONS**

14 Typically, there are two main locations of these various distractions: inside and outside the  
15 vehicle.

16

17 **Inside:** Although not an exhaustive list, the following are a few activities that could take place  
18 inside the vehicle that can distract your attention to driving: talking to passengers; correcting  
19 behavior of passengers; adjusting the radio or climate controls; eating and drinking; reading  
20 maps or route sheets; talking on a phone or CB device; daydreaming, or being occupied with  
21 other mental distractions.

22

23 **Outside:** Some distractions that can occur outside a vehicle include other vehicles, traffic,  
24 pedestrians, objects in roadway, sunlight, and reading billboards or other advertisements.

25

#### 26 **EFFECTS OF DISTRACTED DRIVING**

27 Effects of distracted driving include slowed perception, which may cause you to be delayed in  
28 perceiving or completely fail to perceive an important traffic event; delayed decision making and  
29 improper action, which can cause you to be delayed in taking the proper action or make incorrect  
30 inputs to the steering, accelerator or brakes.

31



1 In addition to the above effects of distracted driving, there is another effect that is significant for  
2 school bus drivers. Passing up student stops is often a result of inattention or distracted  
3 driving. Many districts require drivers to radio if a stop is passed or missed. If a driver, who is  
4 familiar with a route, is passing by stops, it is often a sign of daydreaming or being distracted by  
5 some other means.

6

7 The Large Truck Crash Causation Study (LTCCS) reported that eight percent of large-truck  
8 crashes occurred when Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) drivers were externally distracted,  
9 and two percent of large truck crashes occurred when the driver was internally distracted.

10 Approximately 5,500 people are killed each year on U.S. roadways and an estimated 448,000 are  
11 injured in motor vehicle crashes involving distracted driving (NHTSA Traffic Safety Facts:

12 Distracted Driving). Research indicates that the burden of talking on a cell phone - even if it's  
13 hands-free - saps the brain of 39% of the energy it would ordinarily devote to safe driving.

14 Drivers who use a hand-held device are more likely to get into a crash serious enough to cause  
15 injury. (NHTSA distracted driving website) As stated in Chapter 1, it is illegal to use a handheld  
16 wireless device while the CMV is in motion.

17

## 18 **ELIMINATING/MINIMIZING IN-VEHICLE DISTRACTIONS**

19 Your goal should be to eliminate or significantly minimize all in-vehicle distractions before  
20 driving begins. The following are suggestive steps to take.

- 21 • Consider all potential in-vehicle distractions before driving.
- 22 • Develop a preventative plan to reduce/eliminate possible distractions
- 23 • Expect distractions to occur.
- 24 • Verbalize to students when it is an appropriate and safe time to have conversations with  
25 drivers.
- 26 • Discuss possible scenarios before getting behind the wheel and formulate a preventative  
27 plan to reduce/eliminate possible distractions.
- 28 • If drivers react a half-second slower because of distractions, crashes double.

29

## 30 **RECOGNIZING OTHER DISTRACTED DRIVERS**

1 You need to be able to recognize other drivers who are engaged in any form of driving  
2 distraction. Not recognizing other distracted drivers can prevent you from perceiving or reacting  
3 correctly in time to prevent a crash.

4  
5 Here are a few things to watch for:

- 6 • Vehicles that may drift over the lane divider lines or within their own lane.
- 7 • Vehicles traveling at inconsistent speeds.
- 8 • Drivers who are preoccupied with maps, food, cigarettes, cell phones, or other objects.
- 9 • Drivers who appear to be involved in conversations with their passengers.

10

11 Give a distracted driver plenty of room and maintain your safe following distance. Be very  
12 careful when passing a driver who seems to be distracted. The other driver may not be aware of  
13 your presence, and they may drift in front of you.

14

### 15 **TRAFFIC AIDS - SIGNS and LIGHTS**

16 **Note to Instructor: In this section, it is best to have examples of what each item is.**

17

18 Traffic laws and signals are standard throughout the state, but traffic signs may vary depending  
19 upon the local road geography. Standardized traffic control devices are used to control and guide  
20 driver behavior. Most bus drivers will be familiar with many of the devices because they have  
21 been driving private automobiles for several years.

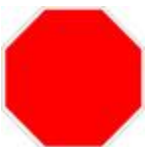
22

23 The driver should be able to describe the meaning and proper driver reaction to the various  
24 shapes and colors of traffic signs. Size, shape and color are used in specific ways and each  
25 convey a definite message.

26

### 27 **SHAPE**

28



29 An octagon (eight-sided) shape always means stop. It is red with white letters and has

1 eight (8) sides. It means you must come to a complete stop in a safe position in relation to traffic,  
2 then proceed when the way is clear.

3  
4 Come to a complete stop and yield right-of-way to pedestrians. Stop behind marked or unmarked  
5 crosswalk or stop line. Without stop line or crosswalk, stop even with the stop sign. If sign is  
6 placed so that a driver should not stop at the stop sign, stop at the point nearest the intersecting  
7 roadway where the driver has a view of approaching traffic on the intersection roadway. A  
8 driver's choices for stopping are (in order) 1) stop line, 2) stop sign, 3) common sense.

9  
10 NOTE: At a cross street, the driver may have to make two or more complete stops. The driver  
11 must stop at the designated stop and, if unable to see, he must move forward until he is able to  
12 see clearly in all directions and stop again before proceeding.



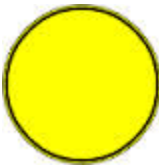
14 A diamond shape is a warning of existing or possible hazards on the roadway on  
15 adjacent areas.



17 An inverted triangle shape means to yield. Slow down and be ready to stop if  
18 needed. Give the right-of-way to traffic and pedestrians.



19 A red slash inside a circle means you cannot do something.



20 A round shape (circle) means railroad crossing. In Kentucky, all school bus drivers  
21 must stop at all railroad crossings (15 to 50 feet).



1 A pentagon (five-sided) shape tells you there is a school zone or school crossing  
2 ahead. Slow down and watch for children.



3 A pennant means no passing. It is usually found on left side of road.



4 A triangle means a slow moving vehicle. A vehicle carrying this sign cannot travel  
5 faster than 25 MPH.



6 A shield guides. It identifies highway by number and symbol as part of national, state  
7 or local system.



8 A horizontal (rectangle) shape is a guide sign.

9

## 10 **COLOR**

11 The color of the sign also has meaning:

12 Red - Stop, yield, do not enter or wrong way.

13 Yellow - General warning of what to expect ahead.

14 Blue - Information about motorist services along the road.

15 Green - Guide information such as distance or direction.

16 White - Regulatory.

17 Black - One-way traffic and weigh stations.

18 Orange - Warning of construction and maintenance.

19 Brown - Public recreation areas and scenic guidance.

1 **TRAFFIC SIGNALS**

2 Traffic signals are valuable devices to control traffic and assign right-of-way. The message in  
3 traffic signals is relayed through the use of colors, therefore, the meaning of the colors have been  
4 standardized. The three main colors which guide traffic flow are Red, Green, and Yellow.

5  
6 **RED**

7 A red light without a green arrow means “STOP” behind a crosswalk or stop line until the green  
8 light appears.

9  
10 **YELLOW**

11 The yellow light means that the traffic signal is about to turn red. Stop if you can do so safely.  
12 Never try to “beat” a yellow light. Not only is it unsafe, it is against the law to be in an  
13 intersection when the light is red, even if it was yellow when you entered. A vehicle should clear  
14 the intersection by the time the light changes or, if unable to, the vehicle should stop.

15  
16 **GREEN**

17 If the way is clear, you may go straight or turn left or right, unless such turns are prohibited.

18  
19 **FLASHING LIGHTS**

20 A flashing yellow light means you must slow down and watch for others. It is found at  
21 intersections, construction areas and on some emergency vehicles such as tow trucks.

22  
23 **FLASHING RED LIGHTS**

24 Flashing red lights means that you must come to a complete stop and proceed only when the way  
25 is clear.

26  
27 **FLASHING YELLOW ARROW**

28 A flashing yellow arrow means you may proceed with caution in the direction of the arrow.

29  
30 **TWO FLASHING RED LIGHTS**

31 Two flashing red lights mark a railroad crossing.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**LIGHTED ARROWS**

Some intersection traffic lights have lighted arrows in addition to the regular lights to tell you when it is your turn to proceed.

**GREEN ARROW**

A green arrow means you may proceed in the direction of the arrow provided you are in the proper lane. Yield to pedestrians and other traffic in intersection.

**ARROW POINTED UPWARD OR DOWNWARD**

This means you may go “straight ahead.” When there is more than one traffic light, obey the one that is over your lane.

**LANE SIGNALS**

Green – A steady green arrow pointed downward indicates drivers are permitted to drive in that lane.

Yellow – A steady yellow “X” indicates that drivers should clear that lane as signal is preparing to change to red.

Red – A steady red “X” indicates that drivers should not drive in that lane.

**REGULATORY SIGNS**

Regulatory signs inform highway users of traffic laws or regulations. Regulatory signs are generally a rectangle with the longer dimension vertical with a black legend on a white background. Other colors and shapes are also used.

Two (2) of the most common regulatory signs are used to indicate right-of-way. These are stop and yield signs.

- They are used to control turning movements.
  - “Do Not Turn Right”
  - “No U Turn”
- Used to control alignment

- 1           ○ “Pass With Care”
- 2           ○ “Do Not Pass”
- 3       • Indicate exclusion
- 4           ○ “Do Not Enter”
- 5           ○ “Wrong Way”
- 6       • Prohibiting certain types of vehicles
- 7           ○ “No Trucks, No Bicycles”
- 8           ○ “Motor Vehicles Only”
- 9       • Indicate one-way movement.
- 10       • Control parking
- 11           ○ “No Parking Any Time”
- 12           ○ “No Stopping, Standing, or Parking”
- 13           ○ “No Parking, Bus Stop”
- 14           ○ “One-hour Parking”
- 15           ○ “Parallel Parking Only.”
- 16       • Supplement information given by traffic signals
- 17           ○ “Stop Here On Red”
- 18           ○ “No Turn on Red”
- 19           ○ “Crosswalk”
- 20       • Other controls
- 21           ○ axle weight limits
- 22           ○ railroad crossings
- 23           ○ road is closed to through traffic

## 25 **WARNING SIGNS**

26 The second major classification of traffic signs is “warning signs.” Warning signs inform the  
27 driver of situations ahead which may require extra care. These signs are yellow with black  
28 lettering and generally are diamond-shaped. Other shapes are used for very specific purposes. In  
29 addition to the signs below, additional signs include highway grades and advance warning of  
30 railroad crossing.

31

- 1 Warning signs are used to:
- 2 • Show changes in horizontal alignment
    - 3 ○ Turns, curves and winding roads
  - 4 • Various types of intersections ahead or crossroad and are indicated symbolically.
    - 5 ○ “T”, “+”, and “Y” intersection
  - 6 • Advance warning of traffic control devices
    - 7 ○ “Stop Ahead”
    - 8 ○ Pictures of the device ahead, such as yield sign or a traffic signal
  - 9 • Show converging traffic lanes
    - 10 ○ Symbolic merge sign
    - 11 ○ Message or symbolic sign for showing the right lane ends
  - 12 • Indicate narrow roadways
    - 13 ○ “Road Narrows”
    - 14 ○ “One-Lane Bridge.”
  - 15 • Changes in highway design
    - 16 ○ “Divided Highway Ahead”
    - 17 ○ “Divided Highway Ends”
    - 18 ○ “Two-Way Traffic”
  - 19 • Roadway surface conditions
    - 20 ○ “Bump”
    - 21 ○ “Soft Shoulder”
    - 22 ○ “Slippery When Wet”
  - 23 • Entrances and crossings
    - 24 ○ “Truck Entrance”
    - 25 ○ “Deer Crossing”
    - 26 ○ “Bicycle Crossing.”
  - 27 • Advisory Speed
    - 28 ○ Entrance Ramp Speed
    - 29 ○ Exit Ramp Speed
  - 30 • Special type
    - 31 ○ “No Passing Zone”



1                   ▪ When used, they are on the left side of the road and used in conjunction  
2                   with the regulatory “Do Not Pass” sign.

- 3       • School signs
  - 4           ○ “School Area”
  - 5           ○ “School Crossing.”

6

## 7 **GUIDE SIGNS**

8 “Guide signs” are the third major classification of traffic signs and guide drivers along streets  
9 and highways, informing them of interesting routes or directing them to their destination. They  
10 are generally rectangular in shape and have a white message on a green background. On  
11 conventional roads and streets, black messages on white backgrounds are frequently used as an  
12 alternative. Also, different colors and shapes are used for special purposes.

13

14 Guide signs include:

- 15       • Route marker- illustrates those used on, or in conjunction with the interstate system
  - 16           ○ US routes, state routes, county roads and roads in national parks and forests
- 17       • Junctions of highways
- 18       • Cardinal direction of a highway
- 19       • Alternate routes
- 20       • Advance route
  - 21           ○ Turn arrows and directional arrows
- 22       • Mileage signs
  - 23           ○ Mileage always runs from south to north or west to east and begins at the state  
24           line or at a junction where the route begins.
- 25       • Locations of airports, bus stations and train stations
- 26       • Gas, food, lodging or camping
- 27
- 28       • Special guide signs:
  - 29           • White message on a brown background - recreation areas
  - 30           • White messages on a blue background - service sign
    - 31           ○ Phone

- 1           ○ Hospital
- 2           ● Black letters on a yellow background -“Exit Only”
- 3           ○ Advise drivers of an imminent lane end situation

4

5 Highway construction and maintenance signs fall into the same three (3) major classifications as  
6 other signs. Regulatory signs used in construction and maintenance zones use the normal  
7 standard colors, shapes and messages. Warning and guide signs also use the standardized shapes  
8 and messages, but are distinctive in that black letters are used on an orange background. Typical  
9 construction and maintenance warning signs warn of construction or a detour ahead. They can  
10 warn of road work, shoulder work or a survey crew ahead. Typical construction and maintenance  
11 guide signs provide information on the length of a construction or maintenance zone or the  
12 direction of a detour.

### 13

### 14 **ROADWAY MARKINGS**

15 Like traffic signs and signals, roadway marking have a purpose and convey a specific meaning.  
16 In some cases, they supplement the regulations and warnings conveyed on traffic signs and  
17 signals. In other instances, they are used alone as there is no other way to effectively  
18 communicate this information. Roadway markings are standardized in color and type.

19

20 The different types of lines used in roadway markings are:

21 White– defines separation of traffic flow in the same direction.

22 Yellow– defines separation of traffic flow in the opposite directions.

23 Broken– are permissive in nature. When traffic permits, broken lines may be crossed.

24 Solid– are restrictive in nature. Generally, they are not to be crossed.

25

26 Solid White– Used to channel traffic and prevent lane changes near intersections. Pavement  
27 markings are sometimes used to define pedestrian crosswalks. When lines are used, they run all  
28 the way across the pavement. If a stop is required, drivers must stop before crossing the  
29 pedestrian crosswalks. They are also are used to mark the edge of the pavement. Pavement edge  
30 lines should not be crossed at moderate to high speeds. They may be crossed, however, at slow  
31 speeds when it is necessary to pull off onto the shoulder. When solid white lines separate traffic

1 moving in the same direction, do not cross to change lanes.

2

3 Broken White– separate traffic lanes moving in the same direction when a roadway has more  
4 than one (1) lane moving in the same direction. When traffic permits, broken white lines may be  
5 crossed to change lanes.

6

7 Solid Yellow– separates traffic moving in the opposite direction. When the solid yellow line is  
8 on the driver’s side of the road, it must not be crossed. One of the newer uses of the solid and  
9 broken yellow line used together, is to define a left turn lane. The left turn lane is marked on both  
10 sides by both solid and broken yellow lines. Drivers wishing to turn left must turn from this lane.

11

12 Double Solid– indicate maximum restriction. Indicates that passing is prohibited in either  
13 direction on two-lane roads. Double solid yellow lines also indicate the center of the road on  
14 roads of four or more lanes.

15

16 Broken Yellow– separates traffic moving in the opposite direction. When the broken yellow lines  
17 are on the driver’s side of the road, it may be crossed if oncoming traffic permits.

18

19 White Arrows – are used to show direction of travel for a given lane.

20

21 Center Lane, Left Turn Only – (marked on both sides by solid yellow and broken yellow lines).  
22 Use only when turning left. Do not use for passing.

23

24 Crosswalk Lines – Indicate where pedestrians are to cross. Do not block crosswalks. Yield to  
25 pedestrians.

26

27 Stop Lines – Indicates where a vehicle must stop at intersections.

28

29 Delineators- special kinds of guide markings to aid drivers at night. Reflective devices are  
30 sometimes used on long continuous stretches of highway or on short sections where there is a  
31 change in the curvature of the road. Delineators are intended to help guide motorists as to the

1 horizontal and vertical alignment of the highway. Delineator colors conform to the edge line  
2 colors painted on the highway.

3

4 Three (3) colors are used:

5 White – may be placed on the side of the roadway.

6 Yellow – may be placed on the left side of the roadway.

7 Red – placed backwards on a ramp or roadway so it would be viewed by motorists  
8 traveling in the wrong direction on the ramp or roadway.

9

DRAFT

1 **CHAPTER 3**  
2 **CARE AND MAINTENANCE**  
3

4 **OBJECTIVES**

5 The bus driver will be able to:

- 6 • describe basic bus components
- 7 • detect symptoms of possible trouble
- 8 • identify driving actions which prevent undue wear on the bus
- 9 • identify interior and exterior maintenance tasks
- 10 • perform a pre-trip inspection of a bus

11  
12 **OVERVIEW**

13 Preventative maintenance is the care of a vehicle to ensure safety, dependability and maximum  
14 life of the vehicle. It involves organized inspections at regular mileage or time intervals and  
15 immediate attention to all reported defects. These inspections involve checking, cleaning,  
16 tightening, lubricating and adjusting parts and units. Inspections are the simplest and most  
17 economical means of protecting the bus fleet and are the key to a good preventative maintenance  
18 program.

19  
20 A trained mechanic will carry out the maintenance inspection program, but the school bus driver  
21 is able to observe a bus's performance under all conditions. Defects should be recognized and  
22 immediately reported to the maintenance department. A driver should not wait in order to try and  
23 self-diagnose issues with the bus. A bus driver is responsible for turning in the school bus when  
24 requested by the technicians so that proper maintenance can be done. A school bus is to be  
25 inspected every 30 days. A bus that is not inspected in the 30 days is deadlined, which means it  
26 is no longer allowed to be driven for the transportation of students. Each school district will have  
27 a maintenance schedule that technicians and drivers must follow. A driver that does not turn in  
28 the bus when requested, could potentially be preventing required maintenance to be completed,  
29 putting the bus in an unsafe condition.

30  
31 We will be going over a brief explanation of the basic bus components and at the completion of

1 this section and you should be able to briefly discuss how each component works. Technical and  
2 in-depth knowledge and explanations are not needed, but understanding the basic concept of the  
3 component is the goal.

4

5 Lesson 1

## 6 **SCHOOL BUS COMPONENTS**

7 A driver should have a basic knowledge of school bus components to understand their effect on  
8 the operation of the school bus. There will be times when this knowledge will be useful in  
9 adjusting driving performance and in detecting trouble while on the route. Proper driving habits  
10 will increase bus efficiency and economy of operation as well as prolong the life of the bus.

11

### 12 **BRAKING SYSTEM**

- 13 • Hydraulic
- 14 • Air

15 Pressing on the brake pedal forces fluid into the brake cylinder or air into the air chamber. On  
16 hydraulic systems, the cylinder moves the brake shoes outward against the brake drum. On an air  
17 system, the air chamber rotates the s-cam and forces the shoes against the brake drum. This  
18 creates friction causing the wheel to slow and stop.

19

### 20 **TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT**

21 Gears allow you to change the ratio of number of engine revolutions to number of wheel  
22 revolutions.

23

### 24 **CLUTCH**

25 When depressed, disconnects engine from transmission, allowing changing of transmission  
26 gears.

27

### 28 **STEERING**

29 The steering wheel and column connect to gears and a linkage mechanism which change  
30 direction of front wheels.

31

1 **ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**

2 Supplies power for primary engine functions and auxiliary functions.

3

4 Primary Engine Function

- 5 • Power generation and storage (battery, generator/alternator and voltage regulator)
- 6 • Power distributions (engine wiring)

7

8 Auxiliary Functions

- 9 • Inside/outside lighting (headlights, amber/red flashing warning lights, turn signals,  
10 instrument panel lights, etc.)
- 11 • Air/heat circulation (heater, defroster, blowers)
- 12 • Horn

13

14 **SUSPENSION**

15 Leaf springs, air bags, and mounted shock absorbers enable the driver to handle the bus properly  
16 on rough terrain and sharp curves, etc.

17

18 **TIRE CONSERVATION AND SAFETY**

19 Check tires for cuts, bruises, uneven wear and air pressure. The following will improve tire life  
20 and vehicle safety:

- 21 1. Reduce mileage. Use the bus only on scheduled trips and avoid unnecessary driving.
- 22 2. Drive at low speeds.
  - 23 a. Tires will last twice as long at 30 mph compared to 50 mph.
  - 24 b. High speed harms tires more in hot weather than in cold. Tires wear six times  
25 faster at 100 degrees than at 40 degrees.
  - 26 c. Drive slowly, especially on roads with sharp, projecting stones.
  - 27 d. Drive slowly on curves and turn slowly. Speeding around curves multiplies tire  
28 wear.
- 29 3. Maintain tire pressure at the level recommended by the tire manufacturer.
  - 30 a. Slight under-inflation increases tire wear. Six pounds under inflation for a tire  
31 which should carry 30 pounds of pressure will decrease the life of the tire at least

- 1                   20 percent.
- 2                   b. Learn what the pressure should be and check all tires, including spares, once a
- 3                   week. Keep valve cap screwed on tightly.
- 4                   4. Avoid rocks, holes, curbs, glass and other objects
- 5                   a. Anything which produces a sudden sharp bend in the casing is likely to break
- 6                   cords within the tire; other cords break around the weak spot and the tire will fail
- 7                   as a result.
- 8                   b. Cuts or bruises in the side wall will shorten tire life.
- 9                   5. Complete a daily inspection
- 10                  a. Inspect tires daily for cuts, snags, bruises, nails, glass and gravel.
- 11                  b. Water and grit get in at flaws and destroy interior cord structure.
- 12                  6. Avoid fast starts and stops as they scuff off tire tread. One ten-foot skid takes many miles
- 13                  off tire life.
- 14                  7. Keep brakes adjusted so tires evenly brake.

15

16 **Lesson Overview:** Ask the students questions, and give them ample time to answer. Once

17 answered, provide feedback and encourage a discussion.

18

- 19                  1. Which bus component is made up of a system of gears? Transmission
- 20                  2. Which system is responsible for the way the bus handles and rides on rough terrain and in
- 21                  sharp curves? Suspension
- 22                  3. Which bus system works on fluid or air pressure? Brakes
- 23                  4. Which component disconnects the engine from the transmission so you can change
- 24                  gears? Clutch
- 25                  5. When inspecting tires, what are you looking for? Cuts, bruises, uneven wear and air
- 26                  pressure

27



1 Lesson 2

2 **DETECTING SYMPTOMS OF POSSIBLE TROUBLE**

3 **Note to Instructor:** Emphasize listening, feeling, looking, and smelling. The bus driver will be  
4 able to detect symptoms of possible trouble.

5

6 **Visual Tools:** Ask the technicians for items which are obvious to a driver as broken, cracked or  
7 unsafe. This will be a good time to bring in old oil so the driver can see and smell it.

8

9 **Additional Tools:** You may want to invite one of your bus technicians to answer questions. The  
10 intent is to gain basic knowledge of the school bus, not become mechanics.

11

12 **Hands-on Lesson:** Describe, in detail, your local procedure for reporting any of the symptoms  
13 discussed. Provide your district's forms for reporting issues and give each of the drivers an issue.  
14 Ask them to fill out the form, after it has been explained. Once the form has been completed, go  
15 over them and address any issues immediately.

16

17 \*\*\*Stress anything they notice that is out of the ordinary should be reported. There is danger in  
18 thinking that an unusual noise, etc., is nothing to worry about, especially if a driver has  
19 mechanical experience. Be sure they understand they don't need to know what is wrong before  
20 they report something "suspicious." **It is better to report any unusual condition, even if it  
21 turns out to be minor, than to not report something that could be dangerous and/or costly.**

22

23

1 Be alert for symptoms of problems. Use your senses to detect signs of possible trouble. Anytime  
2 something doesn't seem right, go with your instincts and call it in.

3

4 **LISTENING FOR TROUBLE**

- 5 • Sharp knock when picking up speed or light knock when engine is idling
- 6 • Dull regular knock, clicking or tapping noises
- 7 • Continuous or intermittent squeal or squeak
- 8 • Loud exhaust noise
- 9 • Engine backfiring, missing, popping, spitting or overheating
- 10 • Steaming or hissing

11

12 **FEELING FOR TROUBLE**

- 13 • Excessive vibration in the engine compartment, steering wheel, and/or drive line
- 14 • Low speed or high speed shimmy
- 15 • Hard steering and/or steering wander

16

17 **LOOKING FOR TROUBLE**

18 **IF ANY OF THESE OCCUR, THE VEHICLE SHALL NOT BE DRIVEN UNTIL THE**  
19 **PROBLEM IS CORRECTED**

- 20 • Sudden drop in oil pressure
- 21 • Low oil pressure
- 22 • No oil pressure
- 23 • Excessive oil consumption
- 24 • Smoke coming from under the dash
- 25 • Smoke coming from under the hood
- 26 • Scuffed tires or spotty wear
- 27 • High temperature reading
- 28 • Drop in air pressure

29

1 **SMELLING FOR TROUBLE**

2 **ANY OTHER UNUSUAL CONDITIONS SHOULD BE REPORTED IMMEDIATELY**  
3 **TO THE PROPER AUTHORITY**

- 4 • Odor of diesel fuel
- 5 • Odor of burning rubber
- 6 • Odor of burning oil
- 7 • Hot/burning electrical smell
- 8 • Exhaust fumes

9  
10 Now that you are familiar with the basic components of a school bus and we have discussed  
11 being alert for signs of possible problems, let's look at each component and discuss specific  
12 signs of trouble.

13  
14 **PREVENTING PROBLEMS BY DETECTING TROUBLE EARLY**

15 **BRAKING SYSTEM**

- 16 • Drop in air pressure (air brakes only).
- 17 • With no brakes applied, should not leak more than 2 PSI per minute.
- 18 • More than one inch play in slack adjusters
- 19 • Low brake pedal (hydraulic or vacuum- hydraulic brakes)
- 20 • Spongy or soft brake (hydraulic or vacuum-hydraulic brakes)
- 21 • Smell or see brake fluid (hydraulic or vacuum-hydraulic brakes)
- 22 • Brake drum very hot (all types)

23  
24 **ENGINE**

- 25 • Engine miss at low speed
- 26 • Engine miss at high speed
- 27 • Ping when accelerated
- 28 • Dull "clunk" at idle
- 29 • Sharp, loud knocking; **SHUT OFF ENGINE IMMEDIATELY!**
- 30 • Heat gauge indicates temperature rising higher than normal

- 1 • Oil pressure dropping below normal
- 2 • Engine stalls or runs sluggishly

3

4 **TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT**

- 5 • Hard shifting
- 6 • Slipping out of gear
- 7 • Clunk or jerk when power is applied or released
- 8 • Unusual sounds when power is applied

9

10 **CLUTCH**

- 11 • Motor revving with clutch engaged and vehicle in gear and moving
- 12 • Odor of burning clutch lining
- 13 • Gear clash
- 14 • Squealing sound when clutch pedal depressed, with engine running
- 15 • Clutch “chattering”

16

17 **AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT**

- 18 • Leaks
- 19 • Slipping or loss of power
- 20 • Jerk or clunk when shifting up or down
- 21 • Fails to shift

22

23 **STEERING**

- 24 • Steering very difficult
- 25 • Wheels shimmy
- 26 • Bus veers one way or the other
- 27 • Bus wanders on roadway
- 28 • More than two inches (2”) free play in steering wheel with engine running

29

1 **ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**

- 2 • Voltmeter indicates an under or over charge: **WATCH OUT FOR FIRE**
- 3 • Smoke appearing around wires, switches, etc.
- 4 • Voltmeter indicates heavy charging
- 5 • Lights dim

6

7 **SUSPENSION**

- 8 • Bus bounces or rolls from side to side easily
- 9 • Bus out of alignment
- 10 • Bus “bottoms” on bumps

11

12 **It is better to report any unusual condition, even if it turns out to be minor, than to not**

13 **report something that could be dangerous and/or costly.**

14

15 **Lesson Overview:**

- 16 1. Ask the students questions. Provide feedback once the questions are answered. Be sure to
- 17 give them time to answer. Lead and encourage discussion answering questions as they are
- 18 asked.
- 19 2. What is an early sign of trouble for the braking system? Drop in air pressure, low brake
- 20 pedal, etc.
- 21 3. If it is hard to shift, what might be causing an issue? Transmission
- 22 4. What should you do if you hear a loud knocking sound? Shut off the engine immediately
- 23 5. If the voltmeter indicates an under or over charge, what could the result of this be? Fire

24

25

1 **Lesson 3**

2 **DRIVING ACTION PREVENTING WEAR ON THE BUS**

3 **Note to Instructor:** Emphasize the reason for good driving habits.

4

5 The bus driver will be able to identify driving actions which prevent undue wear on the bus. If  
6 you have access to actual worn brake shoes, clutch plates, or other items, pass them around for  
7 examination by the class. You may want to invite one of your bus technicians to answer  
8 questions. The intent is to provide an understanding of how the driver's daily activities effect the  
9 bus.

10

11 **Student Lesson:**

12 It is important to understand that your driving habits can help avoid undue wear on each specific  
13 bus component. In this section, we will discuss ways you can help prolong the life of the bus.

14

15 **BRAKES**

- 16 • Do not jam brakes on hard, apply steady and smooth pressure.
- 17 • Do not depress clutch until engine stall speed is reached so engine can assist in  
18 stopping the bus.
- 19 • Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal.
- 20 • On buses equipped with air brakes, drain water out of air reservoir (if board policy  
21 permits).
- 22 • Pump the brakes (once or twice) on long, hard stops.
- 23 • Before starting downhill, shift to lower gear to aid heat dissipation and reduce brake  
24 fade. If air brake equipped, check gauges; should be capped off at 120-125 PSI.
- 25 • Before starting downhill, place bus in proper gear. If low air pressure alarm comes  
26 on, pull over to side of road, secure vehicle and do not move until air pressure is up to  
27 safe level.

28

29 **REMEMBER:** The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the  
30 braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper gear, the following is a proper  
31 braking technique:

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

1. Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
2. When your speed has been reduced to approximately five (5) mph below your “safe” speed, release the brakes. This brake application should last for about three (3) seconds.
3. When your speed has increased to your “safe” speed, repeat steps 1 and 2.

**EXAMPLE:**

If your “safe” speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade. Escape ramps have been built on many steep mountain downgrades. Escape ramps are made to stop runaway vehicles safely without injuring drivers and passengers. Escape ramps use a long bed of loose, soft material to slow a runaway vehicle, sometimes in combination with an upgrade.

Know escape ramp locations on your route. Signs show drivers where ramps are located. Escape ramps save lives, equipment and cargo. Use them if you lose your brakes.

**ENGINE**

- Do not race engine during warm-up
- Do not speed at any time
- Do not lug engine; this causes engine and driveline damage.
- Lugging – trying to go up a hill in too high a gear which causes a strain on the engine
- Do not allow engine to operate beyond established oil changes and maintenance intervals
- Do not accelerate too quickly; this causes extreme stress during periods when oil pressure is low and results in excessive wear
- Do not attempt to operate engine when oil pressure is low, temperature is high, or voltmeter indicates a continuous discharge
- Do not add water to overheated engine
- Never remove a radiator cap on a hot engine
- Allow diesel engine to idle according to manufacturer’s recommendations before

1           shutting off engine

2

3   **TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT**

4   In an automatic equipped bus, select a lower range to slow the bus.

- 5       •     Avoid fast acceleration on rough surfaces
- 6       •     Do not release the clutch quickly
- 7       •     Transmit power and shift smoothly (coordination)
- 8       •     Avoid jerky movements of any kind

9

10 **STEERING**

- 11       •     If you cannot avoid potholes, drive around them if possible, or slow down if you must
- 12           drive through them.
- 13       •     Have mechanic inspect steering if you hit a bad bump or pothole

14

15 **ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**

- 16       •     Do not drive when voltmeter indicates discharge
- 17       •     Do not start engine with lights or heaters on
- 18       •     Check belt tension and battery water level
- 19       •     Do not operate heaters and lights for an extended period when bus or engine is
- 20           stopped
- 21       •     Do not run lights and/or heaters for a prolonged period of time with engine at idle

22

23 **SUSPENSION**

- 24       •     Do not travel fast on rough roads
- 25       •     Do not cross rough areas at high speeds
- 26       •     Check wheel alignment if the bus is on a rough road frequently

27

28 **BUS CLEANLINESS**

- 29       •     Safeguard student health
- 30       •     Prevent incidents caused by students falling, tripping or slipping on the floor



- 1 • Serve as a role model for students. Enlist student cooperation in keeping the bus neat
- 2 and clean and do not allow eating or drinking on the bus
- 3 • give the public a favorable impression
- 4 • help prolong the life of the bus

5

6 Just as driving actions have an effect on the bus and the environment, so do idling practices.

7 Newer buses have an anti-idling component that will automatically shut the bus off after a

8 certain time limit. Older buses do not have this component and will require the driver to be

9 mindful of how long the bus is running. A bus doesn't need more than a few minutes to warm

10 up. The longer the bus is running and idling, the more gas that is being used; the more pollutants

11 are being put into the atmosphere; and the more pollutants students and others are breathing in.

12 Good practices to be aware of:

- 13 • Turn off the bus upon reaching a school or other destination (after cool down period) and
- 14 do not turn on the engine until necessary to depart from the school or destination.
- 15 • Park the bus at least 100 feet from a known and active school air intake system, unless
- 16 the school district has determined that alternative locations block traffic, impair student
- 17 safety, or are not cost-effective.
- 18 • Do not park nose-to-tail when it can be avoided. Your exhaust will go into the air intake
- 19 of the bus you are parked in front of.
- 20 • Leave sufficient following distance between other buses at all times.
- 21 • Arrive at the school as close to the scheduled time as possible to maintain interior warmth
- 22 during cold weather.

23

24 Regardless of the engineering involved, a school bus cannot continue to deliver maximum safety,

25 economy and dependability unless it is properly maintained. Although skilled mechanics repair

26 the school buses, a driver can do much to aid the mechanic and prolong the life of the vehicle by

27 following the guidelines in this manual.

28

### 29 **Lesson Overview:**

30 Ask the students questions, and give them ample time to answer. Once answered, provide

31 feedback and encourage a discussion.

- 1 1. What is an early sign of trouble for the braking system? Drop in air pressure, low brake  
2 pedal, etc.
- 3 2. If it is hard to shift, what might be causing an issue? Transmission
- 4 3. What should you do if you hear a loud knocking sound? Shut off the engine immediately
- 5 4. If the voltmeter indicates an under or over charge, what could the result of this be? Fire
- 6

DRAFT

1 **Lesson 4**

2 **INSPECTING THE BUS**

3 **Note to Instructor:** The driver will be able to identify interior and exterior maintenance tasks.

4 The driver will be able to complete a pre-trip inspection.

5

6 **Hands-on Lesson:** Describe, in detail, what is expected of the driver. Walk the students through  
7 the procedures step by step while at the bus. Show them what they are to do in order to complete  
8 a proper Kentucky School Bus Walk Around, Pre-trip, and Post Trip Inspection. While  
9 conducting the different inspections, explain the difference between the Pre-trip, Walk-around  
10 and Post-Trip inspections.

11

12 **\*\*\*Stress that each inspection is important in maintaining a safe school bus. Federal law requires**  
13 **each inspection and if there is an accident, the inspections will be reviewed. If an inspection is**  
14 **not done, it can be cause for further action by law enforcement.**

15

16 Also, stress that anything they notice that is out of the ordinary should be reported. There is  
17 danger in thinking that an unusual noise, etc., is nothing to worry about, especially if a driver has  
18 mechanical experience. Be sure they understand they don't need to know what is wrong before  
19 they report something "suspicious." **It is better to report any unusual condition, even if it**  
20 **turns out to be minor, than to not report something that could be dangerous and/or costly.**

21

1 Daily inspections will help the driver identify problems for repair and maintain a clean and safe  
2 bus. Regular inspections will help decrease maintenance costs. The pre-trip inspection shall be  
3 part of a driver's daily routine. The time invested in the pre-trip inspection could result in the  
4 saving of lives, or avoid an on-the-road breakdown or collision.

5  
6 There are three inspections that are conducted by a school bus driver. They consist of the pre-trip  
7 inspection, walk-around inspection and the post trip inspection. Each should be done daily, when  
8 a school bus is in use.

9  
10 **WALK -AROUND INSPECTION**

11 A walk-around is an inspection that is done during subsequent bus runs, after the initial pre-trip  
12 inspection has been completed. Walk-arounds consist of checking the items below. Use the  
13 procedures from the pre-trip inspection for each item.

- 14 1. Steering            5. Mirrors  
15 2. Tires                6. Service Brake  
16 3. Console            7. Park Brake  
17 4. Dash Panel        8. Emergency Equipment

18  
19 **PRE-TRIP INSPECTION**

20 All school buses must have a complete pre-trip inspection that meets federal and state regulations  
21 before the first trip each day. A pre-trip must also be done by any subsequent driver that uses the  
22 bus.

23  
24 Example: If you use bus 101 for the first time today, you must complete a pre-trip inspection. If  
25 you go to Bus 102 later, and it was used by someone else, you must complete a pre-trip  
26 inspection. The first person may have missed something important. If you go back to bus 101  
27 and no one else has used it since you did the pre-trip inspection, you will not have to perform  
28 another pre-trip inspection. However, if someone else used it after you did the initial pre-trip,  
29 you must complete another one. Something may have happened to the bus while it was being  
30 used and you need to ensure it is in good operating condition before using it.

31

1 Follow along using the pre-trip inspection form.

2

3 **ENGINE COMPONENTS**

- 4 1. As you approach the vehicle, check the posture of the bus. Make sure it is not leaning to  
5 either side and there are no obstacles, such as wires or tree limbs in the path of the bus.  
6 Look under the front of the bus to check for oil, transmission fluid, water or anti-freeze  
7 leaks, check crossing gate, if equipped.
- 8 2. Check front lights, lens covers and reflectors. Make sure they are mounted and secure.  
9 Check west coast, fender and crossover mirrors.
- 10 3. Check the windshield for anything that may obstruct your view. Check wipers to make  
11 sure the rubber is mounted and secure. Check spring tension on wipers.
- 12 4. Open hood latches; each latch must be mounted and secure. Visually inspect the hood for  
13 damage.
- 14 5. Check engine oil, automatic transmission fluid (if so equipped) and windshield washer  
15 fluid.
- 16 6. Inspect the engine, one side at a time. Check power steering fluid, hoses and belts. Make  
17 sure everything is mounted and secure with no leaks and no more than 3/4" play in the  
18 belts. Check steering shaft, steering box and steering linkage for securement.
- 19 7. Check radiator and heater hoses, in addition to the reservoirs for leaks and sufficient fluid  
20 level. Check the water pump located on the front of the engine, behind the fan, for leaks.  
21 Check that the belts have no more than 3/4" of play.
- 22 8. Check air compressor for leaks and securement. Check belts (if equipped) to compressor  
23 for frays or cracks and that there is no more than 3/4" play.
- 24 9. Check alternator and wires. Make sure it is securely mounted with no more than 3/4" play  
25 in belts.

26

27 **FRONT SUSPENSION**

- 28 10. Check leaf springs for broken or missing parts. Check hanger brackets and mounts for  
29 securement. Check shocks for leaks.

30

31 **FRONT BRAKES**

- 1 11. Check front air line and front air chambers for damage, leaks and securement. Check that  
2 the cotter pin is mounted and secure. Check front drums for oil soaking, cracks, welds or  
3 rust. You may not be able to check brake linings as all Kentucky School Buses have dust  
4 covers.

5

## 6 **FRONT WHEELS**

- 7 12. Inspect front tires for cuts and bruises. Make sure tread depth in major grooves is at least  
8 4/32". Check for mismatched, recapped or re-grooved tires on front. Look down the front  
9 of the tire, checking for cuts and bruises. Check rims for cracks, rust, or welds. Check air  
10 pressure. Make sure lug nuts are tight and there is no heavy rust, missing lug nuts or leaks  
11 in hub oil seals. Check air valves and stems for leaks and ensure caps are on the valves.

12

## 13 **EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT**

- 14 13. Move to the front door. As you enter the bus, open and close the door. Check the glass  
15 and rubber seal on the door. Check for broken steps or torn coverings. Make sure hand  
16 rails are securely mounted and that pinch points have been eliminated.
- 17 14. Check fire extinguisher. Make sure it is charged. Check the first-aid kit. Check for spare  
18 fuses. Check for three (3) reflective triangles and body fluid clean-up kit.

19

## 20 **START ENGINE**

21 **Note to Instructor: Inform the students that for our buses, the bus will typically build up to**  
22 **120-125 PSI.**

- 23 15. Make sure parking brake is on and gearshift is in neutral. Start engine. Allow air pressure  
24 to build to 120-140 PSI (typically 125 PSI). Check all gauges; oil pressure, air, voltage,  
25 water temperature and fuel gauge. Test window washer and wipers (high and low). Check  
26 mirrors for proper adjustment. Test all heaters (high and low), defrosters and fans. Check  
27 dome lights, stop arm and override switch. Check front big yellow lights, and amber  
28 indicator light, headlights, flashing red stop lights and red indicator light, stop arm,  
29 crossing gate, turn signals and four-way hazards. Check for no more than 2" play in 20"  
30 steering wheel. Check park brake. With park brake on, place vehicle in low gear. Raise  
31 engine RPM to 1500 (if bus moves, brakes are out of adjustment). Check service brake

1 for air usage per application. On a straight shift air brake equipped bus, place in low gear,  
2 release clutch and lightly accelerate with park brake applied. If bus moves, brakes are out  
3 of adjustment.

4  
5 Allow buses with hydraulic parking brakes to slowly roll forward, apply park brake,  
6 vehicle should stop. Check horn, driver seat and seat belt.

## 8 **AIR BRAKE TEST**

9 **Note to Instructor: Explain that chocking the wheels is necessary if the bus is parked on an**  
10 **incline or if it is district policy.**

11  
12 16. Chock rear wheels (if necessary). Turn OFF the engine. Turn the key to on. Push in  
13 parking brake. Start your brake LAB check.

14  
15 LEAKS - Press on brake pedal for one minute. It should not leak more than 3 PSI per  
16 minute.

17 ALARM – Pump brakes. Alarm should come on before it falls below 60 PSI.

18 BUTTON – Continue pumping brake. Button should pop out between 40 and 20 PSI.

## 19 20 **PASSENGER COMPARTMENT**

21 17. Start engine and build air to 120 PSI; shut engine off but leave key on. Walk through bus  
22 checking floors and seat backs. Open and check ALL alarms on emergency windows,  
23 roof hatches, left side emergency door, if equipped, and rear door. Big yellow lights  
24 should be checked from the back door. Go outside and check all of your lights. Turn  
25 signals, hazards, head lights, parking lights, clearance lights, brake lights, marker lights,  
26 warning lights and big reds should all be tested. You cannot check back-up lights unless  
27 it is dark, because gear needs to be in reverse and the key on.

## 28 29 **FUEL AREA**

30 18. Check down right side. No leaks in fuel lines or tank. Check fuel cap, fuel tank and cage  
31 for securement. Visually inspect exhaust system, drive shaft and shaft guards, frame,

1 slack adjusters, air chambers, air lines, drums and shocks. Check windows, reflectors and  
2 clearance lights. Visually check rims for cracks, rust or welds; axle seals, inside and  
3 outside and spacers. Inspect lug nuts and valve stems. You may not be able to check the  
4 drums or brake linings because of dust cover. Visually look for leaks, metal shavings or  
5 damage.

#### 6 7 **REAR SUSPENSION (VISUAL)**

8 19. Check the leaf springs, mounts and air ride, if equipped.  
9

#### 10 **REAR WHEELS**

11 20. Check rear tires (tread depth in rear should be no less than 2/32" in all major grooves)  
12 and check tires for proper inflation. Check the rims, lug nuts, drum bolts, axle seals  
13 (inside and out) and the spacers.  
14

#### 15 **REAR OF BUS**

16 21. Go to the rear of bus. Check lights, reflectors and rear glass. Open and check rubber seal  
17 around door. Check that the license plate is securely mounted. Check all lens covers.  
18 Make sure everything is mounted and secure.

19 22. Check the left side the same as the right. Also check the left emergency door, stop arm  
20 and battery box.  
21

#### 22 **SPECIAL EQUIPMENT**

23 23. On lift bus, check wheelchair lift, door, tie downs and floor tracks. Check for "Knife for  
24 Life" and fire blanket.  
25

#### 26 **OTHER**

27 24. Check service brakes. Move the bus slowly forward, apply the brakes and check for  
28 proper brake operation.  
29

30 As a school bus driver, safety is your number one priority. Each inspection provides an  
31 opportunity to identify anything that may cause a problem. It is also an opportunity for you to



1 know the bus inside and out. As a driver, you are on the bus daily and can inform a technician of  
2 anything that looks unusual. To a technician, what is unusual on your bus, may be normal on  
3 another bus. Don't take any chances and report anything out of the ordinary.

#### 4 5 **POST-TRIP INSPECTION**

6 A post trip inspection is an inspection that is done at the end of each route or trip. It is important  
7 so that as the driver of the bus, you can identify areas of concern, including safety concerns.

- 8 1. **Check the bus for students.** While verifying no students are on the bus, also check  
9 for forgotten books, clothing or other items. Return items to owners on the next trip,  
10 or turn them into the office.
- 11 2. Sweep the floor and, in the winter, sweep water out of the bus to prevent freezing.  
12 Sweep bus steps also.
- 13 3. Check bus seats for pencil/pen marks or other damage.
- 14 4. Close all windows, hatches, and the front door.
- 15 5. Check adjustment of mirrors, driver's seat and vents.
- 16 6. Check fuel tank gauge, follow local procedures for filling the fuel tank.
- 17 7. Check all lights to ensure they are working.
- 18 8. Clean the windshield and side windows, and wash the exterior of bus at regular  
19 intervals. Keep all exterior lights, mirrors and the license plate clean.
- 20 9. Check outside of the bus for dents and scratches.

#### 21 22 **Lesson Overview:**

23 Ask the trainee's questions. Provide feedback once the questions are answered. Be sure to give  
24 them time to answer. Lead and encourage discussion answering questions as they are asked.

- 25
- 26 1. What is the importance of the Pre-Trip Inspection? It helps the driver identify problems for  
27 repair and maintain a clean and safe bus.
- 28 2. When checking the front door of the school bus, what should you be looking for? Broken  
29 glass, cracked/broken rubber seal, and to make sure it opens.
- 30 3. How long should you hold the brakes during the LAB check? 1 minute
- 31 4. When pulling on the slack adjuster, how much play is allowed? No more than 1" play

1 5. Name the eight components you should check when doing a walk-around.

2 1. Steering

5. Mirrors

3 2. Tires

6. Service brake

4 3. Console

7. Park brake

5 4. Dash panel

8. Emergency equipment

6

DRAFT

1 **CHAPTER 4**

2 **CRITICAL SITUATIONS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES**

3

4 **OBJECTIVE**

- 5 • Understand the causes of critical situations;
- 6 • Recognize and be able to respond to different emergencies
- 7 • Understand how to stop quickly and safely
- 8 • Understand the procedures in case of an incident, mechanical failures/breakdowns and
- 9 evacuating a bus in case of emergency

10

11 **INTRODUCTION**

12 Even the most competent bus driver is confronted by critical situations created by various causes;

13 such as hazardous roadway conditions, mechanical malfunction, and unpredictable outside forces

14 or obstacles and driving failures. The professional bus driver is prepared to meet these situations.

15 Listed below are some of the most common critical situations you might experience which we

16 will discuss in this chapter:

- 17 • Traction loss, skid control/recovery
- 18 • Vehicle malfunction and failure
- 19 • Jackknifing
- 20 • Rollovers
- 21 • Other emergencies

22

23 The driver is in full charge of the bus at all times. Knowing proper emergency procedures,

24 emergency evacuation procedures, and incident scene procedures is a must. These areas of

25 responsibility deal directly with the safety and care of your passengers in the event of an incident

26 or emergency situation.

27

28 The school bus driver must know what to do, how to do it, and when to do it. Check school

29 district policies concerning incidents, emergency procedures or breakdowns. One of the goals of

30 this unit is helping you properly respond to critical situations. To help you in this regard, we will

31 define and identify critical situations, predict how and why drivers respond a certain way, and

1 explain how you can improve your responses.

2

3 **CAUSES**

4 A critical situation is any situation which may result in a collision. Critical situations may be  
5 caused by driver action, roadway situation, and/or vehicle malfunction.

6

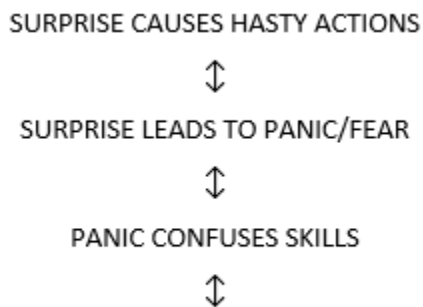
7 Critical situations allow little or no time for decision making and frequently produce an incorrect  
8 response. A driver will make close to twenty (20) major decisions every mile. A major decision  
9 is classified as one that could be life threatening. The element of surprise influences a driver's  
10 actions. Lack of knowledge and skill, and lack of practice of that knowledge and skill can also  
11 influence whether a driver is surprised.

12

13 **RESPONSE**

14 Why drivers respond as they do:

15



16 CORRECT ACTIONS MUST BE LEARNED IN ADVANCE

17 Experience in dealing with a critical situation reduces the emotional impact on drivers and  
18 increases the chance of making the correct response.

19 **Drivers can improve their responses by learning the following:**

20

Thinking reduces panic.  
 ⇕  
 Ability depends upon driver mindset.  
 ⇕  
 Knowledge and practice reduces surprise.  
 ⇕  
 "What if" is good practice.  
 ⇕  
 Repetition reduces surprise.

1  
2  
3

**DRIVER SAFETY FORMULA**

SKILL  
 +  
 KNOWLEDGE  
 +  
 CONDITIONING  
 +  
 CONCENTRATION  
 =  
 REDUCTION IN CRITICAL SITUATIONS

4

The main point of this formula is a combination of several components that lead to a reduction in critical driving situations. These components will be covered in this unit. A conditioning process and constant concentration will help you prevent critical situations from going beyond the point of no escape. It is felt that if a driver makes a concerted effort to stay away from other vehicles, obstacles, and pedestrians, he/she will lessen the decisions that he/she will be required to make. Thus, the fewer the decisions, the fewer the opportunities for mistakes.

11

**DRIVING EMERGENCIES**

13

When driving any type of CMV there will be instances which cause you to experience emergency driving. Vehicle and traffic emergencies are two types of emergencies that you may face while driving. Vehicle emergencies occur when tires, brakes or other critical parts fail.

15

1 Traffic emergencies occur when two vehicles are about to collide. Following the safety practices  
2 in this chapter can help prevent such emergencies or at least lessen the severity. Avoiding a crash  
3 depends upon how well you take action.

4

### 5 **Steering to Avoid a Crash**

6 One way to avoid an incident is to be sure you have allowed enough room to stop your vehicle.  
7 However, stopping is not always the safest thing to do in an emergency. If you do not have  
8 enough room to stop short of hitting an object or vehicle, you may have to steer away from it.  
9 Always remember that you can almost always turn to miss an obstacle more quickly than you  
10 can stop. Top heavy vehicles and tractors with multiple trailers may flip over.

11

### 12 **Keep Both Hands on the Steering Wheel**

13 In order to turn quickly, you must grip the wheel firmly with both hands on the wheel. This is  
14 why both your hands should be on the wheel at all times, because we don't know when an  
15 emergency may arise. The thumbs should be on top or outside of the steering wheel.

16

17 In order to turn quickly and safely, do not apply the brake while you are turning as it is very easy  
18 to lock the wheels. You may skid out of control as a result. The best advice is not to turn any  
19 more than needed to clear whatever is in your way. The more sharply you turn, the more chances  
20 of your vehicle going into a skid or rolling over.

21

22 Be prepared to "counter-steer" or turn the steering wheel back in the other direction, once you  
23 have cleared or passed whatever was in your path. Unless you are prepared for such an  
24 emergency, you won't be able to do it quickly enough. Emergency steering and counter-steering  
25 should be thought of as two parts of one driving action.

26

### 27 **Where to Steer**

28 If the oncoming driver has drifted into your lane, moving your vehicle to the right would be the  
29 best. If the other driver realizes what has happened, the natural response would be to return their  
30 vehicle to their own lane of traffic. When something is blocking your path, in order to know  
31 which direction to steer, it would be based on each individual situation.

1 Mirror scans will help the driver know which lanes are empty and can be safely used. If the  
2 shoulder is clear, steering right may be the best direction since something may be passing to your  
3 left. If s there is something in your path both left and right, a move to the right may be best. This  
4 way you won't be forcing anyone into an opposing lane of traffic for a head-on collision.

## 6 **Leaving the Road**

7 There are some emergencies that you may face that require you to steer partially or completely  
8 from your lane of traffic. This may be less risky than facing a collision with another vehicle.  
9 Most shoulders are strong enough to support the weight of a larger vehicle and therefore offers  
10 an available escape route. If you leave the road, here are some guidelines.

### 12 **Avoid Braking**

13 Whenever possible, avoid braking until your speed has reduced to about 20 mph. Then  
14 apply brakes very gently to avoid skidding on a loose surface. To maintain control on all  
15 surfaces, keep at least one set of wheels on the pavement if possible. This helps to  
16 maintain control.

### 18 **Stay on the Shoulder**

19 If the shoulder is clear, stay on the shoulder until your vehicle has come to a complete  
20 stop. Turn on the turn signal and check your mirrors before pulling back onto the road.  
21 This could prevent overcorrecting errors.

### 23 **Returning to the Road**

24 If you are forced to return to the road before you can stop due to a ditch, culvert,  
25 pedestrians, or other objects, the CDL manual suggests:

27 Hold the wheel tightly and turn sharply enough to get right back on the road safely. Do  
28 not try to gradually edge back onto the road. If you do, your tires might grab  
29 unexpectedly and you could lose control. When both front tires are on the paved surface,  
30 counter-steer immediately. The two turns should be made as a single "steer-counter-  
31 steer" movement.

1 **HOW TO STOP QUICKLY AND SAFELY**

2 Your natural response to someone pulling out in front of you is to hit the brakes. This is a correct  
3 response if there's enough distance to stop and you use your brakes correctly. You should brake  
4 in a way that your vehicle stays in a straight line and if necessary be able to turn your vehicle.  
5 You can use the "stab braking" method or the "controlled braking" method.

6

7 **Stab Braking**

8 In using this method, you should apply the brakes all the way and release brakes when wheels  
9 lock up. As soon as the wheels start rolling, apply the brakes fully again. (You should allow up  
10 to a 1 second delay before the wheels start moving again before applying the brake. Failing to  
11 wait for the wheels to start rolling may result in the vehicle not straightening out.)

12

13 **Controlled Braking**

14 With this method, you should apply the brakes as hard as you can without locking the wheels.  
15 Steering wheel movements should be very small when using this method. If you need to make a  
16 larger steering wheel adjustment or if the wheels lock, you should release your brakes and re-  
17 apply the brakes as soon as possible.

18

19 **Don't Jam on the Brakes**

20 Emergency braking does not mean pushing down on the brake pedal as hard as possible.  
21 This will only keep the wheels locked and in turn cause a skid. If the wheels are skidding,  
22 you can't control the vehicle.

23

24 **BRAKE FAILURE**

25 **Loss of Hydraulic Pressure**

26 Brakes kept in good condition rarely fail. Hydraulic brake failures mostly occur for one or two  
27 reasons, either loss of hydraulic pressure or brake fade on long hills. When the braking system  
28 fails to build up pressure, the brake pedal will feel spongy or go to the floor. Here are some  
29 things that you can do in case this occurs.

30

31 **Downshift your Vehicle.** By putting the vehicle into a lower gear, it will slow the



1 vehicle.

2  
3 **Pump the Brakes.** Sometimes pumping the brake pedal will create enough hydraulic  
4 pressure to stop the vehicle.

5  
6 **Use the Parking Brake.** The emergency/parking brake is separate from the hydraulic  
7 braking system. Therefore, it can be used to slow the vehicle. However, be sure to press  
8 the release button or pull the release lever at the same time that you apply the emergency  
9 brake so that you can adjust the brake pressure and keep the wheels from locking up.

10  
11 **Find an Escape Route.** Look for an escape route while slowing down your vehicle. It  
12 can be an open field, side street, or vehicle escape ramp. Turning uphill is a good way to  
13 slow and stop your vehicle. Make sure the vehicle doesn't start to roll backwards after  
14 you stop. Put it in a low gear, apply the parking brake, and if necessary, let it roll  
15 backwards into some obstacle that will insure the vehicle to stop.

### 16 17 **Brake Failure on Downgrades**

18 To almost always prevent brake failure on steep and long downgrades, go slow and use  
19 proper braking procedures. However, once the brakes fail, you're going to need to find  
20 something to stop it.

21  
22 Your best outcome would be an escape ramp. Signs of an escape ramp will be posted where one  
23 is available. Use it. They are usually located a few miles from the top of the downgrade. Every  
24 year, hundreds of drivers avoid injury to themselves or damages to their vehicle by using these  
25 escape ramps. Escape ramps use soft gravel that resists the forward motion of the vehicle causing  
26 it to stop. In addition, some escape ramps use the soft gravel along with a gradual uphill grade  
27 which will slow and stop the vehicle while holding in place.

28  
29 Escape ramps, when available, should always be used when there is brake loss when going  
30 downhill. When there is no escape ramp available, choose the least hazardous escape route you  
31 can. This could be an open field, or a side road that flattens out or turns uphill. Make the move as

1 soon as brake failure occurs. The longer you wait, the faster the vehicle will go, and the harder it  
2 will become to stop.

3

#### 4 **TIRE FAILURE**

##### 5 **Recognize Tire Failure**

6 As soon as you can recognize you have a tire failure, the sooner you will have more time to  
7 react. The major signs of tire failure are:

8

9 **Sound.** When you hear a loud “pop or bang” of a blowout it is easily recognized.  
10 Anytime you hear this sound assume it is your vehicle.

11

12 **Vibration.** If the vehicle vibrates or thumps heavily, it is possible that one of the tires has  
13 gone flat. A flat tire on the rear is harder to detect and it going flat may be the only sign  
14 you get.

15

16 **Feel.** Front tire failures usually cause the steering to feel “heavy”. Rear tire failures can  
17 cause the vehicle to slide back and forth or “fishtail”. However, most of the time dual rear  
18 tires usually prevent this.

19

##### 20 **Respond to the Tire failure**

21 When there is a tire failure, you are in danger. The following are to be performed immediately:

22

23 **Hold the Steering Wheel Firmly.** If a front tire fails, it could twist the steering wheel  
24 out of your hand. Prevention for this is to always hold the wheel firmly with both hands  
25 at all times.

26

27 **Stay off the Brake.** Braking when a tire has failed can cause loss of control. Stay off the  
28 brakes until the vehicle has slowed down unless you are about to run into something.

29 Then, brake very gently while pulling off the road and stop.

30

31 **Check the Tires.** After the vehicle comes to a stop and is secured, get out and check all

1 the tires. This should be done even if the vehicle seems to be handling well. If it was one  
2 of the dual tires, the only way you may know there is a problem is to get out and look.

### 3 4 **ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEMS (ABS)**

5 ABS is a computerized system that keeps your wheels from locking up during hard braking  
6 applications. ABS is used in addition to your normal brakes. It does not increase or decrease your  
7 normal braking capability. It only activates when the wheels are about to lock up. ABS helps to  
8 keep the vehicle under control during hard braking, however it does not necessarily shorten the  
9 stopping distance.

10  
11 **How Antilock Braking Systems Work.** Sensors detect potential lock up. An electronic control  
12 unit (ECU) will then decrease the brake pressure to avoid the wheels locking up. The brake  
13 pressure is adjusted to provide the maximum amount of braking without danger of the wheels  
14 locking up. ABS works faster than the driver can respond to a possible wheel lockup. At all other  
15 times, the braking system will operate in a normal manner.

16  
17 ABS is indicated by a yellow indicator/malfunction lamp, which will appear on the instrument  
18 panel. This includes tractors, trucks, and buses. Newer vehicles have an automatic system check  
19 when the key is turned to the “Run” position. The ABS malfunction lamp will light up for a bulb  
20 check, then goes off quickly. Some older vehicles, the lamp could stay on until you are driving  
21 over 5 mph. If the ABS lamp stays on after the bulb check, or goes on once you are under way,  
22 you may have lost ABS control.

23  
24 **How ABS Helps You.** Your wheels may lock up when you brake hard on slippery surfaces  
25 without an ABS braking system. When wheels lock up, you lose steering control. When the other  
26 wheels lock up, you could possibly skid, jackknife, or even spin the vehicle out of control. ABS  
27 helps to avoid wheels locking up and maintains control of the vehicle. You may not necessarily  
28 stop “faster” with ABS, but you should be able to steer around an obstacle and avoid skids  
29 caused by “over braking”.

30  
31 **Braking with ABS.** You will apply the brake on a vehicle with ABS in the same manner that

1 you always have. Use just enough braking force necessary to stop safely and keep your vehicle  
2 in control. Brake in the same manner regardless of whether you have ABS on the bus, tractor,  
3 trailer, or both.

4  
5 If driving a tractor trailer, always monitor it as you begin to slow down and back off your brakes  
6 (if safe to do so) if you start to lose control. There is, however, one exception to the procedure. If  
7 you are driving a straight truck or combination with working ABS on all axles, you can fully  
8 apply the brakes in an “emergency” stop.

9  
10 **Braking if ABS is Not Working.** Without ABS control you still have normal braking functions.  
11 Drive and brake as you always have. If your vehicle is equipped with an ABS braking system  
12 and the yellow lamp indicator stays on after bulb check, after moving your vehicle up to 5 mph  
13 (older models) or comes on during your trip, you may have lost ABS control on one or more  
14 wheels. Remember, if your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally,  
15 but get the system serviced as soon as possible.

16  
17 **Safety Reminders.** ABS won’t allow you to drive faster, follow more closely, or drive less  
18 carefully. It will not prevent power or turning skids caused by spinning the drive wheels or going  
19 too fast in a turn. It doesn’t necessarily shorten the stopping distance. It helps maintain control.  
20 ABS doesn’t increase or decrease ultimate stopping power. It is in addition to your normal  
21 brakes, not a replacement for them. ABS doesn’t change how you normally brake. Your vehicle  
22 should stop as it always stops. ABS is activated when a wheel has “locked up” because of over  
23 braking.

24  
25 ABS won’t compensate for bad brakes or poor brake maintenance. Drive your vehicle so you  
26 never need to use your ABS. If you need it, ABS could help to prevent a serious crash.

27  
28 On a national and state level, statistics show that school bus drivers are at fault about half of the  
29 time; with failure to yield the right of way being the most common driver violation. Young and  
30 elderly drivers have a higher incident rate than the intermediate age group. Defective brakes are  
31 the most common mechanical factor, however, mechanical failures cause very few incidents.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**TRACTION LOSS**

Traction is important for starting, stopping and turning any vehicle. Traction is the friction between the tires and the road surface that prevents the wheels from slipping or skidding. Traction loss occurs when tires lose their rolling grip on the road surface, resulting in partial or total loss of vehicle control. When traction is reduced or lost completely, you are confronted with a critical situation.

**CAUSES OF TRACTION LOSS**

- Tire conditions
- Hydroplaning
- Environmental conditions
- Driving techniques (over-accelerating, over-braking, over-steering)
- Speed

**Skidding can be minimized by:**

- Keeping brakes and tires in good working order
- Increasing sight distance and reacting to hazards well in advance
- Matching speed to conditions
- Avoiding over-powering, over-braking and over-steering
- Periodically checking the “feel” of slippery surface
- Staying off the highway when conditions are hazardous

**POTENTIAL VEHICLE MALFUNCTIONS**

Critical situations influencing the safety of the school bus and its passengers can develop from vehicle malfunctions as well as from traction loss. Listed below are the potential vehicle malfunctions we will discuss at this point:

- Brake loss
- Steering failure
- Tire blow-out
- Headlight failure

- 1 • Accelerator sticking
- 2 • Engine over-heating
- 3 • Stop Arm/Crossing Gate malfunction

4

## 5 **BRAKE LOSS**

6 Low air pressure buzzer, gauges

7

## 8 **CORRECTION:**

- 9 1. Use the engine as a brake, downshift
- 10 2. Use remaining air pressure to stop bus in a safe location
- 11 3. Call for assistance

## 12 **STEERING FAILURE**

13 Bus does not respond to steering or responds strangely

14

## 15 **CORRECTION:**

- 16 1. Grip wheel firmly – decrease bus speed
- 17 2. Stop bus quickly and safely – get off road if safe to do so
- 18 3. Evacuate passengers, if needed
- 19 4. Secure area

20

## 21 **TIRE BLOW-OUT**

22 Front tire – bus will pull in direction of flat

23 Back tire – rear of bus will swerve or sway violently

24

## 25 **CORRECTION:**

- 26 1. Grip wheel firmly
- 27 2. Release accelerator
- 28 3. Brake gradually – do not lock wheels
- 29 4. Move off roadway when safe to do so
- 30 5. Secure vehicle

31

1 **HEADLIGHT FAILURE**

2 Roadway darkens

3

4 **CORRECTION:**

5 1. Slow down

6 2. Stay on path

7 3. Look for escape

8 4. Look for alternate lighting to assist you

9 5. Turn on parking/auxiliary lights

10 6. Turn on emergency flashers, brake lights and right/left turn signals

11

12 **ACCELERATOR STICKING**

13 The engine races

14

15 **CORRECTION:**

16 1. Cut power to wheels by shifting to neutral

17 2. Depress clutch if manual transmission

18 3. Get off roadway

19 4. Turn off ignition

20

21 **ENGINE OVERHEATS**

22 Shown by temperature gauge or warning light

23

24 **CORRECTION:**

25 1. Pull off road

26 2. Shift to neutral and set park brake

27 3. Run engine at fast idle

28 4. Stop engine if it does not cool

29

30 **NOTE: Do not take the cap off the radiator. Because of the tremendous pressure that has**

31 **built up in the cooling system, the water will shoot out and you could become severely**

1 **burned. Call for assistance.**

2

### 3 **JACKKNIFING**

4 \*\*\*A bus without passengers may tow a trailer or another vehicle. In those cases, a driver should  
5 be aware of the causes of jackknifing and how to avoid or recover from a jackknife. \*\*\*

6

7 Jackknifing refers to the folding of an articulated vehicle so that it resembles a V shape. If a  
8 vehicle towing a trailer skids, the trailer can push the towing vehicle from behind until it spins the  
9 vehicle around and faces backwards.

10

### 11 **CAUSES OF JACKKNIFING**

- 12 1. Equipment failure
- 13 2. Improper braking
- 14 3. Adverse road conditions

15

16 **NOTE: A driver may attempt a deliberate jackknife in order to stop the vehicle in the event**  
17 **of brake failure.**

18

### 19 **TECHNIQUES FOR AVOIDING/RECOVERING FROM A JACKKNIFE**

- 20 • To avoid a jackknife, use ONLY enough braking force necessary to stop.
- 21 • To recover from a jackknife, let up on the brakes, if safe to do so, until control can be  
22 regained.

23

### 24 **ROLLOVERS**

25 A rollover is a type of vehicle incident which results in the vehicle tipping over on its side or  
26 roof. Rollovers have the highest risk of fatality than any other type of vehicle incident.

27

### 28 **CAUSES OF ROLLOVER**

- 29 • Unnecessary turning
- 30 • Sharp turns

31



1 **TECHNIQUES FOR AVOIDING A ROLLOVER**

- 2 • Turn only enough to clear the obstacle in your path
- 3 • Avoid sharp turns, if possible
- 4 • Drive slowly through curves
- 5

6 **INCIDENT PROCEDURES**

7 There are prescribed procedures to follow if a driver is involved in an incident. These are in  
8 statute and regulation. Always remember that no two (2) incidents are exactly the same. The  
9 sequence of things in the suggested procedure may not be practical in every case. Good common  
10 sense should always be the rule.

11

12 **Remember, a driver’s primary responsibility is to their passengers.** The driver must remain  
13 calm. If a driver is physically unable to perform their duties, they should direct others to perform  
14 them. Should this be the case, the oldest and most responsible pupil should be asked to help.

15

16 **STEPS**

17 The following procedures are recommended, should the driver be involved in an incident or an  
18 emergency situation:

19

- 20 1. Set the parking brake.
- 21 2. Turn off the ignition and remove the keys.
- 22 3. Remain calm and reassure the pupils.
- 23 4. Use the emergency reflectors to “protect the scene.” When placing emergency reflectors,  
24 carry the open reflector in front of you between your body and oncoming traffic so that  
25 you will be more visible to other drivers.
- 26 5. Protect the scene from traffic and people so that evidence is not destroyed.
- 27 6. Under normal circumstances, the vehicles involved should not be moved until law  
28 enforcement officers advise to do so, unless the bus is on a railroad track or in danger.
- 29 7. Check for injury to pupils. If pupils are injured, follow first aid procedures (first aid is  
30 covered in another unit).
- 31 8. Keep all pupils on the bus except in the following cases:

- 1 a. A fire or the possibility of a fire. The following are some causes of fires:
- 2 b. Ruptured fuel tank and fuel lines.
- 3 c. Electrical fires.
- 4 d. Hot tires, which may catch fire.
  - 5 i. Extinguish fire if possible, however, a driver should never endanger
  - 6 themselves or their passengers to extinguish a fire.
- 7 e. Danger of Further Collision.
  - 8 i. In normal traffic conditions, the bus should be visible for a distance of
  - 9 three hundred feet (300') or more.
- 10 f. Whenever passengers are endangered.
- 11 9. Account for all pupils.
- 12 10. Notify school administrators and appropriate law enforcement agencies of the location
- 13 and nature of the bus incident.
- 14 11. You should carry a list of emergency telephone numbers on the bus.
- 15 12. Call for help.
- 16 13. Do not discuss the facts of the incident with anyone except the investigating officer and
- 17 school officials.
- 18 14. Make a list of all pupils' names, ages, and addresses (each district should develop a
- 19 process for this information).
- 20 15. Information should be given to the investigating officer concerning the school bus such
- 21 as insurance, make, model, number, owner, bus number, driver's name, address, driver's
- 22 license number, and bus serial number, along with the names of children, their ages and
- 23 seating arrangements. This information should be carried on the bus.
- 24 16. While being investigated:
  - 25 a. Be patient.
  - 26 b. Evaluate questions.
  - 27 c. Give clear, concise answers.
- 28 17. A driver involved in an incident is required to give his name, address, driver's license
- 29 number and vehicle registration number. Be ready to give this information to the other
- 30 driver and also write down the same information regarding him/her.
- 31 18. If witnesses are present, other than the pupils, get their names, addresses and license

- 1 numbers.
- 2 19. The driver should never admit fault or try to assign blame. Generally, the less said the  
3 better.
- 4 20. Cooperate with school officials:
- 5 a. During the investigation of the incident or during a breakdown, do not release any  
6 of the pupils to anyone unless told to do so by school administrators.
- 7 b. If pupils are injured, use the radio to summon help or send someone to call for  
8 aid, such as hospital, ambulance or fire department, wherever help can be  
9 summoned quickly. The injured pupil(s) should be transported by proper and  
10 acceptable means to a hospital for care.
- 11 21. When authorized to do so, continue the transportation of the pupils by:
- 12 a. the present bus, if safe and operable; or  
13 b. a substitute bus.
- 14 22. Report the facts of the incident to the school official in charge of pupil transportation and  
15 assist in completing the necessary incident report forms.
- 16 23. The driver may be required to submit to an alcohol and/or controlled substances  
17 screening in accordance with state and federal laws.

18

19 **REFLECTORS**

20 To protect the pupils and the bus from further incidents and injuries, place the emergency  
21 reflectors in the following manner:

22

23 **TWO-LANE OR UNDIVIDED HIGHWAY**

- 24 A. Place the first reflector one hundred feet (100'), or forty (40) paces, to the rear of the bus  
25 so that it can be seen but not run over.
- 26 B. Place the second reflector ten feet (10') from left rear corner of bus.
- 27 C. Place the third reflector one hundred feet (100'), or forty (40) paces, to the front of the  
28 bus.

29

30 **DIVIDED HIGHWAY**

- 31 A. Place the first reflector one hundred feet (100'), or forty (40) paces, to the rear of the

- 1 B. bus so that it can be seen but not run over.
- 2 C. Place the second reflector ten feet (10') from left rear corner of bus.
- 3 D. Place the third reflector one hundred feet (100'), or forty (40) paces, to the front of
- 4 the bus.
- 5 E. If the bus is blocking a traffic lane, all reflectors should be placed in that lane.
- 6 F. If the bus is on the shoulder of the roadway, the reflectors should be placed on the
- 7 edge of the roadway.

8

9 **CURVE OR HILL**

- 10 A. Place the first reflector one hundred feet (100') to five hundred feet (500'), to the rear
- 11 of the bus so that it can be seen but not run over. It should be placed beyond the
- 12 curve, hill, or obstruction.
- 13 B. Place the second reflector ten feet (10') from left rear corner of bus.
- 14 C. Place the third reflector one hundred feet (100'), or forty (40) paces, to the front of
- 15 the bus or placed beyond any curve, hill, or obstruction.
- 16 D. If the bus is blocking a traffic lane, all reflectors should be placed in that lane.
- 17 E. If the bus is on the shoulder of the roadway, the reflectors should be placed on the
- 18 edge of the roadway.

19

20 **MECHANICAL FAILURE/BREAKDOWN PROCEDURES**

21 Despite preventative maintenance, buses will have mechanical failures. Know what to do and  
22 when to do it if a breakdown occurs on the road.

23

- 24 1. Stop the bus as far to the right as possible (on the shoulder, if available).
- 25 2. Secure the bus and activate the 4-way hazard lights.
- 26 3. Keep the passengers on the bus. If the location of the bus is unsafe, evacuate the
- 27 passengers to a safer location.
- 28 4. Place reflectors in accordance with state and federal laws.
- 29 5. Telephone, radio or contact the proper school authorities, giving the bus location and
- 30 description of breakdown.
- 31 6. See that all pupils are delivered to their destination. Remember, drivers are responsible

1 for the safety of all their students.  
2 7. Complete maintenance repair reports.

3

#### 4 **EVACUATING THE BUS**

5 Usually, pupils remain on the bus during an emergency. Situations such as fires and unsafe  
6 locations will cause the bus should be evacuated.

7

#### 8 **FIRE OR DANGER OF FIRE**

9 The bus should be stopped and evacuated immediately if the engine or any portion of the bus is  
10 on fire or if there is a possibility of fire. Pupils should move to a safe place, one hundred feet  
11 (100') or more from the bus, and remain until the driver of the bus has determined that no danger  
12 exists.

13

14 Situations include:

- 15 • If the engine or any portion of the bus is on fire.
- 16 • Being near an existing fire and unable to move the bus away or near the presence of  
17 gasoline or other combustible materials should be considered as “danger of fire”.
- 18 • If smoke is present.

19

#### 20 **UNSAFE LOCATION**

21 In the event that a bus is stopped due to an incident, mechanical failure, road conditions, or  
22 human failure, the driver must determine immediately whether it is safe for pupils to remain in  
23 the bus or to evacuate. In normal traffic conditions, the bus should be visible for a distance of  
24 three hundred feet (300'), or more. A position over a hill or around a curve where such visibility  
25 does not exist should be considered reason for evacuation.

26

27 A bus must be evacuated if the final stopping point/position:

- 28 • Is in the path of a train or adjacent to any railroad tracks
- 29 • May change and increase the danger. If, for example, a bus should come to rest near a  
30 body of water or where it could still move and go into the water or over a cliff, it should  
31 be evacuated. The driver should see that the evacuation is carried out in a manner, which

1 affords maximum safety for the passengers.

- 2 • is in danger of collision

3

4 In any school bus emergency situation, the driver must use their own judgment when deciding  
5 the best action to take under the circumstances. If an evacuation is necessary, the type of  
6 evacuation will depend on the particular situation. Make sure the pupils get off of the bus safely  
7 and ensure they are safe after they leave the bus by having them assemble at least one hundred  
8 feet (100') from the bus and traffic.

9

### 10 **EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURES**

11 A bus should always be evacuated when:

- 12 1. there is a fire;
- 13 2. there is the potential for a fire to occur; or
- 14 3. the vehicle is in a dangerous position.

15

### 16 **TYPES OF EVACUATION PROCEDURES**

17 There are eight (8) emergency evacuation plans or procedures:

- 18 1. Front door
- 19 2. Rear door
- 20 3. Side door
- 21 4. Front and rear door
- 22 5. Front and side door
- 23 6. Rear and side door
- 24 7. Front, rear and side door
- 25 8. Emergency windows, hatches and windshield

26

### 27 **FRONT DOOR**

28 Everyone exits through the front entrance.

- 29 1. The driver should give the command “emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-  
30 door.”
- 31 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats,

- 1 facing the front.
- 2 3. A helper(s) should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those
- 3 leaving the bus.
- 4 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by
- 5 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.
- 6 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while
- 7 releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students
- 8 are evacuated.
- 9 6. Walk to the front of the bus, checking each seat to be sure it is empty.
- 10 7. Leave the bus and have the helper(s) go with you to join the other students.
- 11

## 12 **REAR DOOR**

13 Everyone exits through the rear emergency door.

- 14 1. The driver should give the command “emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, rear-
- 15 door.”
- 16 2. After the driver announces a rear door evacuation the driver should proceed to the rear
- 17 emergency door and open the rear door.
- 18 3. Have the helper(s) open the door and take position outside the rear door.
- 19 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by
- 20 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.
- 21 5. The driver should then start evacuating the passenger’s one (1) seat at a time beginning
- 22 with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver, who is
- 23 backing towards the front of the bus, reaches the front of the bus and all students have
- 24 been evacuated.
- 25 6. The driver then should walk to the rear of the bus to ensure that all students have exited
- 26 the bus.
- 27 7. The driver should then exit the bus and join the students at the designated assembly
- 28 location.
- 29

## 30 **FRONT AND REAR DOORS**

31 Front half exits through the front door and the rear half exits through the rear emergency door.

- 1 1. The driver should give the command “emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-  
2 rear door.”
- 3 2. The driver should then stand between the first occupied seats, facing the front.
- 4 3. A helper(s) should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those  
5 leaving the bus.
- 6 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
7 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100’) away from the bus.
- 8 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while  
9 releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students  
10 riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated.
- 11 6. The driver should then proceed to the rear emergency door and open it.
- 12 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the  
13 bus.
- 14 8. A helper should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
15 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100’) away from the bus.
- 16 9. The driver should then start evacuating the passenger’s one (1) seat at a time beginning  
17 with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the bus is empty.
- 18 10. The driver then should walk to the front of the bus, checking that the bus is empty and  
19 then leave through the front door and have the helper(s) go with you to join the other  
20 students.

21

## 22 **SIDE DOOR**

23 Everyone exits through the left side door.

### 24 Front Collision

- 25 1. The driver should give the command “emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side  
26 door.”
- 27 2. When evacuating from the left side, the first thing a driver must determine is if there is  
28 traffic approaching the bus from the road and if there is room to evacuate without  
29 jumping into traffic.
- 30 3. The driver should go to the left side emergency door and open it.
- 31 4. He/she should swing out the door and look in both directions for other vehicles



1 approaching the bus and ensure that no child is evacuated into the path of a moving  
2 vehicle.

- 3 5. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground at the side door to assist those leaving  
4 the bus.
- 5 6. A leader should be appointed to lead the children around the bus, toward the rear, facing  
6 traffic to a designated location (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet  
7 (100') away from the bus.
- 8 7. In the event of a front collision, the driver should then begin the evacuation by backing  
9 toward the front of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time until all those  
10 students riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated.
- 11 8. After the front portion of the bus is clear, the driver should then proceed to the area of the  
12 side door and back toward the rear of the bus and release the pupil's one (1) seat at a time  
13 until the remainder of the students are evacuated.
- 14 9. The driver should then check the bus to determine that everyone has evacuated and exited  
15 through the left side door.
- 16 10. Walk to the rear of the bus, facing traffic and ensure there are no students alongside the  
17 bus and then join the students at the designated location.

## 19 **SIDE DOOR**

### 20 **Rear Collision**

- 21 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side  
22 door."
- 23 2. When evacuating from the left side, the first thing a driver must determine is if there is  
24 traffic approaching the bus from the road and if there is room to evacuate without  
25 jumping into traffic.
- 26 3. The driver should go to the left side emergency door and open it.
- 27 4. He/she should swing out the door and look in both directions for other vehicles  
28 approaching the bus and ensure that no child is evacuated into the path of a moving  
29 vehicle.
- 30 5. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground at the side door to assist those leaving  
31 the bus.

- 1 6. A leader should be appointed to lead the children around the bus, toward the front, with  
2 traffic to a designated location (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet  
3 (100') away from the bus.
- 4 7. In the event of a rear collision, the rear of the bus should be evacuated first with the  
5 driver backing toward the rear from the left side door releasing the student's one (1) seat  
6 at a time.
- 7 8. After the rear portion of the bus is clear, the driver should back towards the front of the  
8 bus from the left side door, releasing the student's one (1) seat at a time.
- 9 9. The driver should then check the bus to determine that everyone has evacuated then exit  
10 through the left side door.
- 11 10. Walk to the front of the bus, with traffic to ensure that there are no students alongside the  
12 bus and then join the students at the designated location.

#### 14 **FRONT AND LEFT SIDE DOORS**

15 Half of the passengers exit through the front door and half exit through the left side door.

- 16 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-  
17 side door."
- 18 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats,  
19 facing the front.
- 20 3. Direct the helper(s) to take position outside the front door to assist those leaving the bus.
- 21 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
22 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.
- 23 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while  
24 releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students  
25 riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated.
- 26 6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and check traffic to  
27 determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting  
28 passengers.
- 29 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the  
30 bus.
- 31 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus toward the rear, facing

1 traffic to a designated location where they will join the passengers from the front of the  
2 bus.

3 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, backing towards the rear of the bus releasing the  
4 remaining passenger's one (1) seat at a time by the right-left side method until all the  
5 passengers have evacuated the bus.

6 10. After the bus is empty, the driver will check to determine that everyone is off, the driver  
7 should then exit the front door.

8 11. The driver should walk around the bus to ensure that no one is standing alongside the left  
9 side of the bus and then join the students at the designated location.

### 11 REAR AND LEFT SIDE DOORS

12 Half of the passengers exit through the rear and half exit through the left side door.

13 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side  
14 door."

15 2. After the driver announces a rear-side door evacuation, the driver should proceed to the  
16 rear emergency door and open the rear door.

17 3. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the  
18 bus.

19 4. A helper should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
20 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.

21 5. The driver should then start evacuating the passenger's one (1) seat at a time beginning  
22 with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver who is  
23 backing towards the front of the bus reaches the halfway point.

24 6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and check traffic to  
25 determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting  
26 passengers.

27 7. Two (2) more helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they  
28 evacuate the bus.

29 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus, toward the rear, facing  
30 traffic to the assembly point where the rear half of the passengers are located.

31 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, backing towards the front of the bus releasing the

1 remaining passenger's one (1) seat at a time using the left-right side method until all the  
2 passengers have evacuated the bus.

3 10. After the bus is empty, the driver will check to determine that everyone has been  
4 evacuated, the driver should then exit the left side door.

5 11. Walk to the rear of the bus, facing traffic to ensure that there are no students alongside  
6 the bus and join the students at the designated point.

7

### 8 **FRONT, REAR AND LEFT SIDE DOORS**

9 Passengers exit through the front, rear and left side doors. In this type of evacuation, the  
10 passengers in the front eight (8) seats exit the front door. The passengers in the next six (6) seats  
11 or seven (7) seats exit through the left side emergency door and the rear eight (8) seats exit  
12 through the rear emergency door.

13 1. The driver gives the command "emergency evacuation, remain seated, front, rear and side  
14 door".

15 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats,  
16 facing the front.

17 3. A helper should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those  
18 leaving the bus.

19 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
20 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.

21 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while  
22 releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students in  
23 the front eight (8) seats are evacuated.

24 6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and check traffic to  
25 determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting  
26 passengers.

27 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the  
28 bus.

29 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus, toward the rear, if safe,  
30 facing traffic to the assembly point where the passengers from the front are located.

31 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, starting with the seat next to the left side door and the

1 seat across from the side door. As the driver is backing towards the rear of the bus  
2 releasing the remaining passenger's one (1) seat at a time by the left-right side method for  
3 five (5) more seats depending on bus size.

4 10. The driver should then proceed to the rear emergency door and open it.

5 11. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the  
6 bus.

7 12. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by  
8 the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.

9 13. The driver should then start evacuating the passenger's one (1) seat at a time beginning  
10 with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver who is  
11 backing towards the front of the bus until the rest of the bus is evacuated.

12 14. After the passengers are clear, the driver returns to the front of the bus ensuring all  
13 passengers are off and exits the front door.

14 15. The driver then walks off around to the left side of the bus, facing traffic, to ensure no  
15 one remains alongside of the bus and then joins the passengers at the designated assembly  
16 location.

17 Only the evacuation procedures listed above, excluding the side windows, roof hatches and  
18 windshield, should be practiced by the local school districts during the four (4) annual  
19 evacuation drills.

20  
21 **During an emergency, if no door can be used, everyone exits through the side windows,**  
22 **windshield or roof hatches.**

23  
24 In an emergency a driver may become incapacitated and need help in the evacuation process. At  
25 the beginning of each school year, the driver should choose two (2) or three (3) dependable  
26 pupils for helpers (these are not pupil monitors). Written consent from the parent should be  
27 obtained before assigning a pupil as a helper.

28  
29 The helpers should be instructed in how to:

- 30 1. Take control and stop the bus if something happens to the driver.  
31 2. Turn off the ignition switch and set the parking brake.

- 1 3. Open the service and emergency doors.
- 2 4. Assist the other passengers in exiting the bus. One helper should stay inside the bus to
- 3 keep everyone calm and direct them to the exit they should use. Another helper should be
- 4 outside the bus to assist exiting passengers and direct them to a safe assembly area.
- 5 5. Operate the fire extinguisher.
- 6 6. Use the emergency warning devices.
- 7 7. Give basic first aid.
- 8 8. Summon help.

### 9 **EMERGENCY EVACUATION DRILLS**

10 In an emergency, it is possible for children to jam the emergency door by all trying to get out of  
11 the door at the same time. To help avoid this situation, school administration is required to  
12 organize and conduct emergency evacuation drills for all pupils. Students need to learn to follow  
13 the driver's instructions, therefore it should be the driver giving the instructions to the students,  
14 not an administrator or teacher. These drills should be conducted at least four (4) times during  
15 each school year. The required time to conduct these drills are: the first full week of school; the  
16 first full week of the second semester; and the other two (2) drills within the school year,  
17 preferably one in the late fall and one in the early spring.

18  
19 In the interest of safety, all drills should be planned in advance with the school administration.  
20 The age levels of the pupils should be considered in the planning. An evacuation should be  
21 completed in under two minutes.

22  
23 **A school bus can be fully engulfed in smoke and fire in 3-5 minutes. It is important that all**  
24 **students understand their role anytime they are on the bus.**

- 25
- 26 1. All drills should be supervised by the principal, or by persons assigned by the principal,
- 27 to act in a supervisory capacity. The driver is the person who should administer the
- 28 drill(s).
- 29 2. The driver should have a briefing session with his/her helpers before the drill. Go over
- 30 the drill procedures with them and make sure they understand what to do.
- 31 3. All pupils should be carefully informed about the drill. They should know what to do

1 during the drill or in a real emergency. Never have surprise school bus evacuation drills.

2 4. Drills should be held on school property and not on bus routes.

3 5. The driver should stay on the bus during the drill and follow these steps:

4 6. Stop the bus, set parking brake, turn off engine and remove the key.

5 7. Stand and open the door, face the passengers and get their attention.

6 8. Give the command for the evacuation: “Emergency drill, remain seated”, then give one of  
7 the following:

8 a. “front evacuation”

9 b. “rear evacuation”

10 c. “front-rear evacuation”

11 d. “side evacuation”

12 e. “front-side evacuation”

13 f. “rear-side evacuation”

14 g. “front-rear-side evacuation”

15 i. Procedures:

16 ii. Pupils should be shown how the emergency door operates and they should  
17 be told not to open the door until the driver has given the command to do  
18 so.

19 iii. Care should be given to small children while exiting the emergency door.  
20 They can lower themselves to a sitting position with feet outside the door,  
21 then drop to the ground.

22 iv. A gym mat may be placed beneath the door during the drill and a helper  
23 should assist the pupils as they exist.

24

25 The types of bus drills should be varied. Do not permit children to take lunch boxes, books, etc.,  
26 with them when they leave the bus – getting the pupil off safely in the shortest time possible and  
27 in an orderly fashion is the objective of a school bus evacuation. The pupils should go to a  
28 distance of at least one hundred feet (100’) from the bus away from traffic in an evacuation drill  
29 and remain there in a group until given further directions by the driver or assigned pupil.

30

31 All pupils should participate, including those children who do not ride the bus on a daily basis.

1 Each pupil should be instructed in the proper safety precautions while riding the bus and in  
2 evacuation drill procedures. Instruct pupils how and where to get help. Instructions and  
3 telephone numbers should be posted or otherwise carried on the bus. Every step of an evacuation  
4 should be carried out, including placing the reflectors at the proper distance from the bus. Since  
5 the driver is an active participant in the drill, the principal or some other school official should  
6 observe the drill. After the drill, the driver and the observer can advise the pupils of  
7 improvements to be made and tell them of the job well done.

8

### 9 **EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT**

10 You should know the exact location and operation of the emergency equipment on the school  
11 bus. These include the reflectors, hazard flasher, first-aid kit, fire extinguisher, and body fluids  
12 clean-up kit. All Kentucky school buses must contain these items and they shall be checked  
13 during the pre-trip inspection.

14

### 15 **REFLECTORS**

16 There are three (3) reflectors located on your bus. These can be used at night or in the daytime.  
17 Find the location of these and make sure they are on the bus. Follow the directions previously  
18 discussed for their placement.

19

### 20 **HAZARD FLASHERS**

21 The switch to activate the hazard flashers is located on driver panel, the steering column, the turn  
22 signal arm, or the dash panel. Good judgment should be used when turning on the hazard  
23 flashers. They should only be used to warn traffic or in a dangerous situation.

24

### 25 **FIRST-AID KIT and HAZARDOUS BODY FLUIDS CLEAN-UP KIT**

26 All items used from the first-aid kit should be replaced immediately. The first-aid kit is located  
27 in the driver's compartment. Most of the items in the first-aid kit are used to control bleeding.  
28 Three (3) primary first-aid kit items are to restore breathing, stop bleeding, and/or prevent shock.

29

### 30 **HAZARDOUS BODY FLUIDS CLEAN-UP KIT**

31 All items used from the clean-up kit should be replaced immediately. The clean-up kit is located



1 in the driver's compartment. This kit is used to clean up blood, vomit, urine, or other bodily  
2 fluids. The primary clean-up kit items are rubber gloves, eye shield and face mask, absorbent  
3 beads, and biohazard disposal bag.

4

## 5 **FIRE EXTINGUISHER**

6 All Kentucky school buses are required to have a 3A-40-BC fire extinguisher. 3A means it will  
7 extinguish three (3) square feet of a Class A fire. The 40 BC rating means it is large enough to  
8 extinguish a Class B or C fire covering forty (40) square feet of surface.

9 Class A fires are of ordinary combustible material such as wood, paper, textile fabrics, rubbish,  
10 etc. A Class B fire is a chemical fire which would include flammable liquids such as gasoline,  
11 oil, paints, grease, etc. A Class C fire is an electrical equipment fire where the use of a "non-  
12 conductor" extinguisher agent is of high importance.

13

14 The fire extinguisher gauge should be checked daily to see that it has adequate pressure. If the  
15 indicator needle is in the red area, the extinguisher should be replaced with one that is properly  
16 charged. Regardless of the extent of use, should be recharged or replaced with a substitute  
17 immediately after use. Do not use the bus until the fire extinguisher has been replaced. You  
18 never want to drive a bus that has a fire extinguisher that has been used, expired, or needs  
19 recharging. You never know when you will need it.

20

21 To operate the fire extinguisher:

- 22 1. Remove the fire extinguisher from the bracket.
- 23 2. Hold the extinguisher in an upright position so that all the powder in the extinguisher will  
24 be available for use.
- 25 3. Pull the safety pin by breaking the seal.
- 26 4. If possible, stand upwind from the burning material to prevent standing in smoke and  
27 heat.
- 28 5. Squeeze the handle to discharge the powder. Turn on and off to control the fire.
- 29 6. With nozzle in hand, aim powder at base of fire. The idea is to smother the fire and allow  
30 no oxygen to reach the flame. On oil or gasoline fires, it is better to use a sweeping  
31 motion with the extinguisher.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

The three (3) most common areas where fires occur in a school bus are:

- Under the hood, which can be a fuel and oil fire, electrical fire, or a combination of both;
- Electrical fire under the dash or in the console; or
- A fuel fire in the area of the fuel tank.

**DRIVER LIABILITY FOR PUPIL INJURIES**

A driver can be liable for injuries to school children caused by negligence. Courts have held that four (4) essential elements for negligence must be present:

1. your legal duty to conform to a standard of conduct for the protection of others against unreasonable risks;
2. your failure to conform to the standard;
3. a reasonable close connection between your conduct and resulting injury; and
4. actual loss of damage of the interests of another.

The considerations that most courts use in determining driver negligence are:

1. The degree of care a driver must use ranges from “ordinary” and “reasonable” to “extraordinary” and highest degree”, and depends on their type of duty. Courts tend to require more care when younger children are involved.
2. Children, ages ten (10) or eleven (11), are generally considered capable of recognizing traffic dangers.
3. The driver and the district are accountable for maintaining a safe vehicle.
4. In incidents occurring while boarding and leaving a bus, factors or “reasonable care” and “safe places” determine negligence.
5. A driver is expected to keep order on a bus and may use any of the normally accepted procedures.
6. A driver is not automatically guilty of negligence if injury occurs. The driver can refute charges with proof that proper care was used.
7. A driver may be held liable for “his/her” actions separate from the district’s liability.
8. Negligence is determined by a jury.

1 **SCHOOL BUS INCIDENT REPORTING**

2 As a school bus driver, you are required to report any and all incidents, even minor, to your  
3 director or their designee. Incidents involving serious student injury or fatality or failure of safety  
4 equipment shall be reported to KDE immediately. You must follow your school districts  
5 procedures for reporting. This data is reported to the state and used for annual training and  
6 federal reporting.

DRAFT

1  
2

## CHAPTER 5 VEHICLE OPERATIONS

3 **OBJECTIVES:**

4 To enable the driver to:

- 5
- 6 • Understand the correct procedures for safely and efficiently driving a school bus.
  - 7 • Evaluate the drivers' ability to handle a school bus.

8 To enable instructors to:

- 9
- 10 • Evaluate the drivers' knowledge of school bus operations.
  - 11 • Give drivers the needed practice to enable them to operate a school bus safely and efficiently in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.

12 Drivers will demonstrate their ability to apply all the knowledge and skills gained during the instructional phase of this unit by successfully completing the over-the-road test with a minimum proficiency of 80%.

13  
14  
15  
16 **Note to Instructor:** You will teach the correct and proper procedures for all facets of school bus driving. It is not necessary to be in the classroom to teach the step-by-step procedure for each area. You may do this on the bus while you are showing the drivers the training route. They can follow along in their books or review it prior to class.

17  
18  
19  
20  
21 Drivers will practice the basic driving skills until they become proficient in each skill. Drivers will be evaluated not only by a written test, but by a performance test as well. These tests are designed to ensure that they possess and can correctly apply all these skills and procedures necessary for safe and efficient school bus operation. Through practice, each procedure will become habit and will improve their performance as a school bus driver.

22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27 At this time, you should be looking at the driving mechanics as opposed to how well the student made a right or left turn. Watch for proper steering techniques, visual search, following distance, spatial awareness, braking and general driving techniques. Remember, the student is not expected to be proficient at any of these techniques. You are still in the training phase. The KDE approved score sheet shall be used for documentation of this part of the course. It is acceptable to

1 take notes on the score sheets to help with further training. The score sheet can be found at the  
2 end of the manual.

3

4 The first on-street driving lesson for the student is the rural driving skills. It covers specific rural  
5 situations as well as concepts from the previous lessons. Review the pre-trip inspections, visual  
6 checks, backing and shifting.

7

8 The second lesson involves the operation of the school bus on streets with limited space,  
9 increased vehicular and pedestrian traffic and frequent conflict. Review following distance,  
10 lateral clearances, turns, and entering traffic flow. Avoid traffic congestions when possible.

11

12 The final lesson in the on-street driving sequence and familiarizes the students with concepts and  
13 situations unique to urban areas. Topics covered include increased interaction, distractions, space  
14 restrictions and driving strategies. Review interaction, intersections, and scanning.

15

16 **\*\*The driver should be able to describe each area of regulation, rule, and technique the  
17 driver should be able to describe, in the correct sequence.**

18

19 **Start of Student section.**

20

## 21 **RURAL DRIVING SKILLS**

22 The first actual on-street driving is in a rural area and the emphasis is placed upon interacting  
23 with other vehicles. In addition to know how to operate and maneuver the bus, a bus driver will  
24 be expected to demonstrate and explain the “thinking processes” that are involved in rural  
25 driving.

26

### 27 **BACKING – ONLY WHEN NO OTHER ALTERNATIVE EXISTS**

28 The driver must learn to back into a given space without scraping or hitting stationary objects.

29 In backing a school bus, steps are:

30

31 1. Stop bus in correct position to back.

- 1        2. Check mirrors.
- 2        3. Assure that area is clear.
- 3        4. Secure visual assistance if possible.
- 4        5. Apply brake.
- 5        6. Shift to reverse.
- 6        7. Tap horn lightly, if there is no backup alarm.
- 7        8. Release brake.
- 8        9. Gradually and slowly move.
- 9        10. Steer wheel as necessary.
- 10       11. Use mirrors to monitor the direction of the bus.

11

12 Several techniques for backing which the driver should use are:

- 13        • Physically get out and check behind the bus.
- 14        • Use helper assistance, if possible.
- 15        • For straight backing, hold the steering wheel in 10/2 or 9/3 position.
- 16        • Hand-over-hand steering for either right or left backing.
- 17        • Back slowly.
- 18        • Use side mirrors.
- 19        • Use the inside rear view mirror when possible.
- 20        • Use crossover mirrors for obstructions (not distance judgement).
- 21        • Keep eyes moving to all five (5) mirrors.
- 22        • If still unsure while backing, stop and check outside again.

23

## 24 **FOLLOWING DISTANCE**

25 **Note to Instructor:** Review the following with the students.

- 26        • The “space cushion” is four (4) seconds up to forty (40) mph. Add one (1) second if  
27        traveling over forty (40) miles per hour.
- 28        • Look ahead twelve (12) to fifteen (15) seconds. By scanning the road that far ahead,  
29        trouble can be seen well in advance and can often be avoided.
- 30        • Adjust following distance when increasing speed, driving on wet or icy road, driving at  
31        night, or during weather conditions that adversely affect the driver’s ability to see the

1 roadway and traffic conditions ahead.

- 2 • If at least four seconds have passed before the front of the bus has reached the same
- 3 object that the vehicle in front of you just passed, a proper following distance is being
- 4 maintained if driving 40 mph or slower. The five (5) second following distance should be
- 5 used if driving over 40 mph.

6  
7 Remind the driver to:

- 8 • **Stay alert.** Watch for signs from the driver ahead as to what he intends to do.
- 9 • **Stay ahead of the situation.** Look beyond the driver ahead to see situations that may
- 10 force him to act quickly and thereby become a threat to you.
- 11 • **Start slowing sooner.** Slow down and touch your brakes the instant you see a hazard
- 12 developing that may require you to stop or take evasive action.
- 13 • **Stay away from other vehicles.** Do not travel next to or close to any other vehicle(s),
- 14 person(s) or obstacle(s) at any time unless it is absolutely necessary.

## 15 16 **BEING FOLLOWED**

- 17 1. Signal intended maneuvers.
- 18 2. Check mirrors frequently.
- 19 3. Watch for indications that following vehicles intend to pass.
- 20 4. Observe roadway ahead to anticipate the need to stop.
- 21 5. Use the minimum four/five-second following distance method for Kentucky school buses.

## 22 23 **TURNING**

24 There are some general procedures for turning the school bus which all drivers must know and  
25 utilize. Get into the proper lane and use turn signals early.

26  
27 When turning right school buses must have curb clearance for the rear wheels. Stay close enough  
28 to the right curb to block anyone from passing on the right. There are two (2) procedures that  
29 may be used in executing right turns. Regardless of the method used, the school bus driver must  
30 remember that the responsibility for making a safe turn rests with them.

- 31 1. Approach the corner in the right lane, about four feet (4') from the curb. The bus should

1 be close enough to the curb to keep a car from passing on the right. As soon as the front  
2 wheels pass the corner, turn wide to the right, swinging over the center of the side street  
3 if necessary, in order for the right rear wheels to clear the curb. (It is not recommended to  
4 cross the side street center lane marking.)  
5

- 6 2. When the street onto which the turn is to be made is narrow, the turn may require the  
7 same approach as above, but then, steer left far enough to place the right rear wheel in  
8 position to miss the curb, but not far enough away to invite passing on the right.  
9

10 In preparing for turns, the driver must:

- 11 • Check traffic at the front, sides and rear of the bus.  
12 • Give proper signals to move the school bus into the proper lane for turning.  
13

14 When making turns, the driver must:

- 15 • Give the proper turn signal.  
16 • Reduce speed and before turning, downshift to the proper gear needed to safely execute  
17 the turn.  
18 • Check for a clear right-of-way to ensure that traffic signals give the right-of-way to you,  
19 watch for pedestrians, traffic control signs and other vehicles. Use all outside mirrors to  
20 check around the bus.  
21

22 To properly execute the turn, the driver must:

- 23 • Make the turn smoothly without a strain on the engine.  
24 • Never shift gears during a turn.  
25 • Check mirrors before and while executing a turn.  
26 • Enter the proper lane and check the turn signals for cancellation.  
27 • Steer the wheels back into position by using the hand-over-hand recovery technique.  
28

## 29 **RIGHT TURN**

- 30 1. Give the proper right hand turn signal.  
31 2. Reduce speed and, before turning, downshift to the proper gear needed to execute the



- 1 turn.
- 2 3. Position the bus to the right edge of the lane.
- 3 4. Check for a clear right-of-way.
- 4 5. Check traffic signals, signs, pedestrians and/or other vehicles.
- 5 6. Use both outside mirrors.
- 6 7. Make the turn smoothly without any strain on the engine.
- 7 8. Never shift gears during a turn.
- 8 9. Check the right and left mirrors while executing the turn. This will enable you to check
- 9 your pivot point while turning.
- 10 10. Enter the most available right lane and check turn signal for cancellation.
- 11 11. Steer the wheels back into position by using the hand-over-hand recovery technique,
- 12 unless the bus is equipped with a non-tilt lap wheel.

13

#### 14 **LEFT TURN**

- 15 1. Give the proper left hand turn signal.
- 16 2. Reduce speed and downshift, if needed.
- 17 3. Position the bus to the left edge of right most outer turning lane.
- 18 4. Check for a clear right-of-way.
- 19 5. Check traffic signals, pedestrians or other vehicles.
- 20 6. Use both outside mirrors.
- 21 7. If required to stop, keep front wheels straight and brake pedal depressed. This will
- 22 prevent drifting and activate the brake lights and also prevents being shoved into the line
- 23 of approaching traffic if you were to be struck in the rear.
- 24 8. Drive into the intersection and make the turn smoothly, without strain on the engine.
- 25 9. Check the left and right mirrors while executing the turn.
- 26 10. Never shift gears in a turn.
- 27 11. Enter the roadway by following through and check the turn signal for cancellation.
- 28 12. After completing a left turn upon a multiple-lane highway/street, pick up speed, activate
- 29 right turn signal and move into the right lane as soon as it is safe to do so.

30

#### 31 **TURNAROUND – TWO POINT TURNAROUND**

- 1 1. Give the proper turn signal and tap brakes well in advance of turnaround.
- 2 2. Stop the bus in the proper position on the roadway – one (1) bus length ahead of road to
- 3 be backed into.
- 4 3. Check traffic – front and rear.
- 5 4. Visibility should be excellent in all directions.
- 6 5. Have traffic move around the bus, if possible.
- 7 6. Tap horn lightly, if there is no backup alarm.
- 8 7. Back into the roadway or driveway, using outside mirrors.
- 9 8. Check traffic and re-enter the roadway with caution, after proper signaling.

10

### 11 **LANE SELECTION**

12 **Note to Instructor:** Discuss the proper lane selection from each of the following types of roads.

13 Draw or provide pictures of each scenario.

14

15 Turning left from:

- 16 • Two-way roadway onto a two-way road with two (2), four (4) or six (6) lanes.
- 17 • Two-way roadway onto a one-way road.
- 18 • One way onto a two-way road.
- 19 • One way onto another one-way road.
- 20 • Two-way onto a three lane two-way road.
- 21 • Three lane, two-way onto a two-lane two-way

22

23 Turn right from:

- 24 • Any type of roadway onto any type of roadway.

25

### 26 **MERGING**

27 Care must be used when the driver leaves the bus compound and begins the route. Smooth entry  
28 into the flow of traffic is vital for the safe operation of the school bus. School buses should travel  
29 in the right lane whenever feasible.

30

31 Drive in right lane of roadway except:

- 1 • When overtaking and passing another vehicle moving in the same direction; or
- 2 • When right lane or roadway is closed to traffic due to construction or repair.
- 3 • Follow posted traffic signs for appropriate lane usage.
- 4 • When it is safer to travel in the left lane (for short distances).
- 5 • Drive in any lane of a roadway having three (3) or more lanes in one direction.

6

7 Follow these steps to accomplish a smooth entry into the flow of traffic at a stop:

8

1. Stop at point of entry into the traffic flow.

9

2. Activate right or left turn signal.

10

3. Look to determine that there are no pedestrians in the path of the bus.

11

4. Check mirror to determine that all passengers are seated.

12

5. Look to the right and left to determine whether there are vehicles in motion on the roadway to be entered.

14

6. Yield right-of-way to vehicles already on the road.

15

7. Look for a suitable gap in traffic and when safe, accelerate smoothly into the road, utilizing the turn signal to establish lane position.

16

## 18 **MERGING STEPS**

19

1. Observe traffic to front and rear.

20

2. Look for gap in rear approaching traffic.

21

3. Yield the right of way to all vehicles and pedestrians.

22

4. Activate turn signal.

23

5. Accelerate smoothly into gap in traffic lane.

24

6. Straighten steering wheel.

25

7. Check to see that directional signal has been cancelled.

26

8. Accelerate quickly to speed of traffic.

27

## 28 **MERGING PROCEDURE**

29

When approaching an entrance ramp, observe information signs indicating correct lane or ramp

30

usage, speed, lights and warning.

31

1 **APPROACHING ENTRANCE**

- 2 • Check for an acceleration lane at the end of the entrance ramp.
- 3 • Check for an exit ramp which shares portion of entrance ramp.
- 4 • Observe entrance ramp/main roadway configuration to aid in judging merging distance
- 5 and pattern.
- 6 • Check mirrors carefully.
- 7 • Glance back briefly and quickly over left shoulder to check location and speed of traffic
- 8 on main roadway.
- 9 • Check the location and speed of vehicles on entrance ramp acceleration lane.
- 10 • Make an initial speed adjustment based on entrance ramp/roadway configuration and
- 11 traffic conditions.
- 12 • Prepare to enter the acceleration lane.

13  
14 **ENTERING**

- 15 1. Check mirrors.
- 16 2. Signal intention to merge.
- 17 3. Glance back to check for gap in merging lane. (If merging from right, glance over left
- 18 shoulder.)
- 19 4. Adjust speed as necessary to merge safely.
- 20 5. Try to maintain same speed as the traffic with which you are merging.
- 21 6. Recheck traffic in merging lane with mirrors and head check.
- 22 7. Merge with traffic.
- 23 8. Adjust speed to traffic.

24  
25 **APPROACHING EXIT**

- 26 1. Look for correct exit.
- 27 2. Check mirrors.
- 28 3. Move into proper lane.
- 29 4. Watch for deceleration lane.
- 30 5. Check mirror.
- 31 6. Signal intention to turn.

1 **EXIT**

- 2 1. Reduce speed on deceleration lane, not before, if possible to do so.
- 3 2. Watch for exit ramp speed limit sign.
- 4 3. When deceleration lane is part of acceleration lane, watch for entering vehicles.
- 5 4. Observe speed limit signs.
- 6 5. Drive in center of appropriate lane and stay clear of barriers.
- 7 6. Watch for other vehicles changing lanes.
- 8 7. Observe signs on cross roadways, giving information on alternate destinations.
- 9 8. Check speed.
- 10 9. When nearing end of exit ramp, slow down and prepare to stop. Watch for traffic that
- 11 may be stopped or waiting in line at the end of ramp.

12  
13 **CURVES**

- 14 • Approach curves at speeds that will enable the curve to be negotiated safely.
- 15 • Observe roadway ahead for signs indicating maximum safe entering speed.
- 16 • Reduce speed, if necessary, to attain posted limit.

17  
18 **ENTERING AND DRIVING THROUGH A CURVE**

- 19 1. Look well ahead to anticipate the need for steering conditions and do regular traffic
- 20 checks surrounding the vehicle.
- 21 2. Maintain a position within your lane (not change or “cut across” lanes).
- 22 3. Maintain speed throughout curve by keeping slight pressure on accelerator. Don’t
- 23 increase speed in a curve.
- 24 4. Reduce speed by releasing accelerator and applying the brakes lightly.
- 25 5. Always brake before a curve:
  - 26 a. Whenever initial speed proves too great for rate of curvature, or
  - 27 b. Whenever visibility is restricted by darkness, fog, vegetation or other
  - 28 obstructions.

29  
30 **LEAVING A CURVE**

- 31 Resume original or other safe speeds.

- 1       • A driver may accelerate coming out of a curve. This is called “blowing out” of a curve;  
2       however, this should be done on a conservative basis just gradually accelerate out of the  
3       curve.  
4

## 5   **PROCEDURES**

### 6   **UPHILL**

- 7       1. Select the far right lane or auxiliary climbing lane, if available.  
8       2. Maintain constant speed on upgrades by: Applying accelerator pressure and shifting to  
9       lower gear if necessary.  
10      3. When approaching crest on a narrow roadway, keep as far to the right as safely possible.  
11      4. Slow down slightly when approaching crest to compensate for limited sight distance and  
12      for an anticipated increase in speed upon reaching crest.  
13

### 14   **DOWNHILL**

- 15      1. Look for signs indicating length and/or gradient of downgrade.  
16      2. Shift into the proper gear before beginning a long and/or steep downgrade.  
17      3. Maintain constant speed on downgrades by reducing accelerator pressure.  
18      4. Apply brakes, using the target speed/on again off again method.  
19      5. When vehicle reaches the bottom of downgrade, resume normal driving speed.  
20

### 21   **EXITING TRAFFIC**

- 22      1. Scan roadside for suitable place to stop.  
23      2. Observe shoulder for obstructions (trees, poles, sign posts).  
24      3. Look for spot with no obstructions where vehicles can be seen by traffic in all directions.  
25      4. Check mirrors.  
26      5. Signal intention to leave traffic stream.  
27      6. Reduce speed.  
28      7. Guide school bus gradually off the roadway.  
29      8. Try not to make quick, abrupt movements.  
30      9. Brake gently to a complete stop, if called for.  
31

1 **PASSING**

2 Typically school bus driver should not have to pass another vehicle, however, it might become  
3 necessary and should be done correctly, safely and legally. There is nothing wrong with passing  
4 for the right reasons, but it isn't likely to save time. Passing entails risk. The best rule is: "When  
5 in doubt, don't."

6  
7 Before a driver changes lanes, check west coast and fender mirrors and "glance back" to make  
8 sure blind spots are clear. Use lane change signal. Move over only when the lane is clear. Proper  
9 order is 1) signal; 2) mirrors; and 3) glance. DO NOT STARE.

10

11 **REMEMBER – SAFETY FIRST... SCHEDULES SECOND!**

12

13 DO NOT PASS if the vehicle ahead is:

- 14 • signaling or otherwise indicating a turn
- 15 • changing lanes preparatory to passing
- 16 • weaving or wandering
- 17 • decelerating suddenly
- 18 • passing children, cyclist(s) or animals
- 19 • being passed by another vehicle

20

21 **PASSING PREPERATION**

- 22 1. Decide if the pass is necessary.
- 23 2. Make certain that you have maintained a safe following distance.
- 24 3. Check traffic ahead. If the bus and an oncoming vehicle are both traveling at 55 mph, the  
25 gap is closing between vehicles at the rate of 1.8 miles per minute. Since it takes a  
26 minimum of ten (10) seconds to complete a pass, the oncoming vehicle should be at least  
27 one-half of a mile away.
- 28 4. Using rear-view mirrors, check to be sure that traffic following a bus is clear for passing.  
29 On a two-lane road, check for oncoming traffic and traffic signals. Bus drivers should  
30 have a minimum of fifteen seconds visual lead time to activate turn signals well in  
31 advance of passing.

1 **PASSING PROCEDURE**

- 2 1. Move into passing lane, endeavor to maintain a constant speed.  
3 2. Check for clearance and signal before returning to original lane.  
4 3. Move into original lane.  
5 4. Cancel turn signal.  
6 5. Check mirrors upon completion.  
7 6. Maintain safe and authorized speed.

8

9 **PASSING ON LEFT IS PERMITTED**

- 10 • When overtaking other traffic moving in same direction where passing is allowed and  
11 safe.  
12 • When right half of road is blocked. Yield to oncoming traffic.  
13 • When using a street with two or more lanes for one-way traffic, and when there is slower  
14 traffic in right lane.

15

16 **PASSING ON LEFT IS PROHIBITED**

- 17 • When approaching crest of a hill on a two-way roadway or a curve in highway where the  
18 driver's view is obstructed.  
19 • When view is obstructed upon approaching within 100 feet of any bridge, viaduct or  
20 tunnel.  
21 • When there is oncoming traffic close enough to be a danger.  
22 • When there is a solid line in your lane.  
23 • When there is a no passing sign.

24

25 **PASSING ON RIGHT IS PERMITTED**

- 26 • When vehicle being overtaken is making a left turn if you do not leave the existing  
27 roadway.  
28 • When two or more lanes of traffic are moving in the same direction.

29

30 **PASSING ON RIGHT PROHIBITED**

- 31 • When passing movement causes vehicle to drive off of pavement or main traveled



1 portion of the existing roadway.

- 2 • You should not leave the existing roadway to pass on the right.

3

#### 4 **BEING PASSED**

5 When the bus is being passed, the driver has a condition which could contribute to a very  
6 hazardous situation. The possibility for a potentially dangerous incident exists. The bus driver  
7 could be in a head-on collision, sideswiped, or run off the road. Other vehicles can pass you in a  
8 number of ways.

- 9 • They can overtake and pass you on a straight road – a normal passing situation.
- 10 • They can pass you as you are pulling out of a parking space.
- 11 • They can attempt to pass just as a driver moves out to pass another vehicle.
- 12 • They can pass on the right, which is legal on multi-lane roads or on one-way streets if  
13 they do not leave the roadway, but a driver still has the responsibility for preventing an  
14 incident.

15

16 There are several things a driver must do to make the act of being overtaken and passed a very  
17 safe one.

- 18 • When there is no possible hazard, stay in the right hand lane and maintain speed.
- 19 • Help the other driver pass.
- 20 • Check for oncoming traffic.
- 21 • Slow down if the passing vehicle will need more room to get back in line in.
- 22 • When another vehicle is also approaching from the opposite direction creating a hazard for  
23 the vehicle trying to pass, move the bus to the parking lane or leave the roadway if it seems  
24 that the passing vehicle cannot complete the pass before the oncoming vehicle reaches you, if  
25 safe to do so.

26

#### 27 **PROCEDURE**

- 28 1. Maintain position in center of lane, or move slightly to right, if possible.
- 29 2. Maintain or reduce speed – do not accelerate.
- 30 3. Watch for signals that the passing vehicle plans to cut back in front of the bus.
- 31 4. Turn signal flashing

- 1 5. Driver looks back over shoulder.
- 2 6. Front wheels begin to angle back to right.
- 3 7. Prepare to slow down to provide larger space for passing vehicle to re-enter lane or to
- 4 obtain additional following distance if vehicle cuts in after passing.

## 6 **URBAN DRIVING**

7 There are many hazards a driver encounters during urban driving. They include more traffic  
8 congestion, pedestrians, and busy intersections. Along with these a driver must be aware of the  
9 paces between parked vehicles through which pedestrians and animals may dart into street.  
10 Parked vehicles may suddenly move into path of the bus or occupants of parked vehicles who  
11 may suddenly open doors. With more people on the road and pedestrians, there is always a  
12 chance of someone or something crossing the road in front of the driver. Defensive driving skills  
13 are extremely important with urban driving.

14  
15 Some indications that a vehicle is going to be moving are:

- 16 • Exhaust fumes coming from a vehicle.
- 17 • Back up or brake lights on.
- 18 • Front wheels are turned toward the traffic lane.
- 19 • Driver is looking back over shoulder.
- 20 • Turn signal flashing.
- 21 • Any movement from the direction of the vehicle.
- 22 • Techniques to remember are:
  - 23 • Maintain a reasonable speed.
  - 24 • Maintain your lane position, leaving a reasonable clearance between bus and parked
  - 25 vehicles.
  - 26 • Be ready to stop.
  - 27 • Change lanes if necessary.
  - 28 • Look for a place to steer away from the obstacle.

## 30 **ONCOMING TRAFFIC**

- 31 • Maintain your position to right of centerline.

- 1 • Observe the roadway for slow moving traffic, which might force oncoming vehicles to
- 2 cross the centerline.
- 3 • Take in the whole picture.
- 4 • Be prepared to stop.
- 5 • Look for a place to steer away from the obstacle.

6

## 7 **YIELDING**

- 8 • Yield to any vehicle that is already in the intersection.
- 9 • When reaching an intersection at the same time as another vehicle, yield to the vehicle on
- 10 the right.
- 11 • When approaching a yield sign, slow down to a reasonable speed and yield the right-of-
- 12 way to any vehicle in the intersection and to approaching traffic.
- 13 • When merging at a stop intersection, stop and yield the right-of-way to any vehicle in
- 14 intersection and to approaching traffic.
- 15 • When merging onto a main highway, with or without signs, yield to any vehicle close
- 16 enough to be an immediate danger.
- 17 • When making a left turn, yield right-of-way to oncoming traffic.
- 18 • Stop and then yield the right-of-way.
- 19 • When entering a highway from an alley, private road or driveway.

20

## 21 **EMERGENCY VEHICLES**

22 Yield to emergency vehicles that are sounding a siren and/or flashing warning lights by turning  
23 as far as possible to the right and stopping. Generally, a driver should never turn left.

24

## 25 **INTERSECTIONS PROCEDURE**

### 26 **REGULATIONS**

- 27 • If an officer and the traffic control devices are in conflict, follow officer's directions.
- 28 • Prepare to stop if the light is red, flashing red or yellow.
- 29 • Proceed with caution although ready to stop if light is flashing yellow.
- 30 • Slow down and prepare to stop if traffic light is changing from green to yellow.

- 1 • Proceed through intersection when light changes from green to yellow, if stopping would  
2 cause conflict with following vehicles. However, your bus should clear the intersection  
3 before the light turns red. If in doubt, do not proceed.
- 4 • Slowdown in preparation for stopping at an intersection controlled by a stop arm.
- 5 • Slow down sufficiently to stop, if necessary, at an intersection controlled by a yield sign  
6 and proceed cautiously only when intersection is clear.

7

## 8 **PRECAUTIONS**

- 9 • Observe oncoming traffic for an indication of a left turn and prepare to stop quickly if  
10 oncoming vehicle suddenly makes a left turn.
- 11 • Reduce speed to enable left-turning vehicle in intersection to complete turn, and be ready  
12 to stop if the vehicle does not complete the turn.
- 13 • Observe path ahead of a left or right turning vehicle to anticipate a forced stop by turning  
14 vehicle.
- 15 • Slow down or stop to permit a vehicle approaching from right to clear intersection if  
16 vehicle is close and rapidly approaching intersection.
- 17 • Observe path of vehicle approaching from right to anticipate vehicle entering intersection
- 18 • When vehicle approaches from left and the bus is on a major road, observe other vehicles  
19 for an indication of slowing down and prepare to stop if the vehicle on the left does not  
20 yield right-of-way.

21

## 22 **INTERSECTION APPROACH**

23 If unable to enter correct lane for a turn, proceed to the next intersection.

24 When approaching an intersection:

- 25 • slow-down in sufficient time to avoid stopping in the intersection or on crosswalk; and
- 26 • observe signs providing lane information and enter the correct lane as early as possible,  
27 but no later than 100 feet before reaching intersection.
- 28 • When intending to turn:
- 29 • enter outer right lane for a right turn or outer left authorized lane for a left turn, unless  
30 otherwise directed;
- 31 • check mirrors; and

- 1 • signal intention to turn as soon as possible without causing confusion, but no later than  
2 100 feet before reaching intersection unless it would confuse the motoring public.

3

#### 4 **PROCEEDING THROUGH INTERSECTIONS**

- 5 • When light changes from red to yellow, do not anticipate green light by moving on  
6 yellow light. Wait until light has changed to green before starting.
- 7 • Enter intersection, after checking for cross traffic, if light is green or flashing yellow.
- 8 • Come to a complete stop before proceeding through intersection if there is a flashing red  
9 light.
- 10 • If green arrow governs the lane, proceed only in direction indicated by arrow.
- 11 • When intersection is controlled by a stop sign, come to a complete stop, proceeding only  
12 when it will not interfere with cross traffic.
- 13 • When encountering a “yield” sign, proceed only when it will not interfere with cross  
14 traffic.

15

#### 16 **PROCEDURE**

- 17 1. Be ready to stop.
- 18 2. Observe path of traffic ahead to anticipate any stops and prepare to stop should the lead  
19 vehicle stop suddenly.
- 20 3. Stop if oncoming traffic suddenly makes left turn across path of bus.
- 21 4. Observe traffic from left. If a vehicle signals for a right turn, do not pull out until the  
22 vehicle begins to turn.
- 23 5. Observe traffic from right before entering an intersection and enter only when safe  
24 passage is assured.
- 25 6. Slow down and proceed cautiously if pedestrians are near the corner, yielding right- of-  
26 way or stopping if pedestrian enters street.
- 27 7. Observe oncoming traffic preparing to turn left and prepare to stop should a left turn be  
28 initiated.
- 29 8. It is recommended that a school bus driver NEVER signal another to proceed.

30

1 **OFF-STREET AREA ON LEFT PROCEDURE**

- 2 1. Check mirrors for traffic flow.
- 3 2. Signal for left turn.
- 4 3. Position bus in lane just to right of center line or in left turn only lane.
- 5 4. Keep your wheels straight ahead.
- 6 5. Yield to oncoming traffic.
- 7 6. Watch for other traffic entering or exiting off- street areas.
- 8 7. Check mirrors for rear traffic and passing vehicles.
- 9 8. Check right mirrors to ensure that pivot point of bus will clear object on right.
- 10 9. Complete turn.
- 11 10. Maintain safe entrance speed when turning into off-street area entrance.
- 12 11. Stop only after bus is completely through entrance way and well off main roadway.

13  
14 **OFF-STREET AREA ON RIGHT PROCEDURE**

- 15 1. Check mirrors for traffic flow.
- 16 2. Signal for turn.
- 17 3. If intending to turn into off-street area, immediately beyond an intersection, activate turn  
18 signal when halfway through intersection so that vehicles do not interpret signal as an  
19 indication to turn at intersection. Signal for the benefit of other drivers. You know where  
20 you are going. They do not.
- 21 4. Position vehicle in appropriate lane.
- 22 5. Look for signs or entryway marking indicating direction of travel.
- 23 6. Adjust position of bus to provide proper clearance for entering off-street area.
- 24 7. Check right mirror for passing vehicles and obstructions.
- 25 8. Check left mirrors to ensure that pivot point of bus will clear object on left.
- 26 9. Complete turn.
- 27 10. Maintain safe entrance speed when turning into off-street area entrance.
- 28 11. Stop only after bus is completely through entrance way and well off main roadway.

29  
30 **INTERSECTION – TURN RIGHT**

31 Both the approach for a right turn and a right turn itself shall be made as close as practical to the

1 right curb or edge of roadway. (For school buses, this is the far left side of the right turn lane –  
2 watch pivot point). Vehicular traffic facing a steady red signal, after stopping before entering the  
3 crosswalk or stop line, shall not make a right turn on a red light from a one-way or two-way  
4 street into a two-way street or into a one-way street carrying traffic in direction of the right turn.  
5 The vehicular traffic shall yield right-of-way to pedestrians lawfully within an adjacent  
6 crosswalk and to other traffic lawfully using intersection.

7  
8 When making a turn, use hand-over-hand technique and turn the steering wheel all the way to the  
9 left, if needed. Steering recovery should be done using hand- over-hand technique.

10

### 11 **RIGHT TURN PROCEDURE**

- 12 1. Check mirrors.
- 13 2. Signal intention to turn well in advance of turn.
- 14 3. Both the approach for a right turn and the right turn itself shall be made as close as  
15 practical to the left edge of the right turn lane.
- 16 4. Observe traffic controls before attempting to make right turn.
- 17 5. Check cross traffic on your bus's left and if there is a line of traffic, wait for a gap of  
18 sufficient size before proceeding.
- 19 6. Check cross traffic to right to make sure vehicles are blocking passage in intended lane.
- 20 7. Check right arrow.
- 21 8. Enter travel lane nearest curb, turning sharply enough to avoiding blocking the left lane.
  - 22 a. When making turn, use the hand-over-hand technique and turn the steering wheel  
23 all the way to the right, if needed.
  - 24 b. Avoid shifting gears or using hands for any other activities other than steering  
25 while turning.
- 26 9. Check mirrors for clearance of right rear duals as you turn.
- 27 10. Check mirrors on left to ascertain that pivot point is clear.
- 28 11. Accelerate slightly out of turn.
- 29 12. Steering recovery should be done using hand- over-hand technique (explain tracking).
- 30 13. After turn has been completed, check to see that directional signal has been cancelled.
- 31 14. Adjust vehicle speed to conditions.

1 **INTERSECTIONS – LEFT TURN**

2 To make a left turn, move into lane next to the center line or into “left-turn only” lane. On one-  
3 way street, enter the left (curb) lane. When turning into one-way street or highway, drive into  
4 lane to right of centerline. When turning into one-way street, turn into left lane.

5  
6 Vehicular traffic facing steady red signal, after stopping before entering crosswalk or stop line,  
7 may legally make a left turn from a one-way on a one-way road carrying traffic in the direction  
8 of the left turn unless prohibited by sign, signal, marking, light or other traffic control device. For  
9 safety reasons, this is not recommended in a Kentucky school bus. Vehicular traffic shall yield  
10 the right-of-way to pedestrians lawfully within adjacent crosswalk and to other traffic lawfully  
11 using intersection.

12  
13 **PROCEDURE**

- 14 1. Observe traffic controls before making turn.
- 15 2. Check mirrors.
- 16 3. Signal intention to turn well in advance of intersection.
- 17 4. Reduce speed of bus.
- 18 5. Check cross traffic and wait until there is a sufficient gap in traffic from left and right  
19 before proceeding to turn.
- 20 6. Observe traffic and pedestrians for clear way to make turn.
- 21 7. Yield to oncoming traffic.
- 22 8. Check right mirrors to make certain the pivot point is clear.

23  
24 **TRAFFIC CIRCLES**

- 25 • Enter traffic circle in counter-clockwise direction, if appropriate.
- 26 • Yield to vehicles already in the circle.
- 27 • Remain in outer lane at a consistent speed.
- 28 • Maintain a slow speed.

29  
30 **TUNNEL OR BRIDGE**

31 When going through a tunnel or over a bridge, slow down for better control. Remain to the right



1 to provide clearance with traffic in adjacent lane. Look for signs regarding:

- 2 • lane availability and usage
- 3 • clearance
- 4 • load limit
- 5 • speed limit and passing restrictions
- 6 • use of lights in a tunnel

7

### 8 **TRAVEL THROUGH OR ACROSS**

- 9 • Observe other traffic and lane side structures.
- 10 • Remove sunglasses in tunnel, if worn.
- 11 • Adjust speed to grade changes and observe speedometer frequently.
- 12 • Stop only if traffic flow required it or if emergency exists.
- 13 • Turn lights on in tunnel, if necessary.

14

### 15 **EXITING TUNNEL OR BRIDGE**

- 16 • Observe posted signs regarding exit information and speed limit.
- 17 • Turn off lights upon leaving tunnel during daylight hours.
- 18 • Be prepared for wind bursts when exiting the tunnel.

19

### 20 **LANE CHANGES**

21 Lane changing is one of the most dangerous and difficult maneuvers that a driver can make.

22 Change lanes only when absolutely necessary. The driver of any vehicle upon a highway, before  
23 stopping or turning from a direct line shall signal intended movement. Do not change lanes when  
24 prohibited by regulatory signs, or when solid yellow line is on your side of highway markings.

25

26 Some conditions determining lane changes are:

- 27 • When a lane is blocked by another vehicle.
- 28 • Collision, detour, or road construction, debris in the lane or road defects.
- 29 • Slow moving vehicles, cyclists, or pedestrians.

30

1 **PREPARING FOR LANE CHANGE**

- 2 1. Signal intention to change lanes.
- 3 2. Check mirrors to see if other vehicles are about to enter your new lane.
- 4 3. Check for vehicles in blind spots with convex (fender) mirrors.
- 5 4. Head check for blind spots (to left only).
- 6 5. Maintain constant, steady speed throughout lane change.

7

8 **PROCEDURE**

- 9 1. Turn steering wheel sufficiently to slowly enter new lane.
- 10 2. Position bus in center of new lane.
- 11 3. Check to see that directional signal is cancelled.
- 12 4. Check mirror upon completion.
- 13 5. Adjust speed to that of traffic in new lane.

14

15 **RAILROAD CROSSING**

16 State regulations and national guidelines are set to ensure a school bus properly crosses railroad

17 tracks. In any situation where a train is going to come into contact with a school bus, the train

18 will win. Safety procedures at all railroad grade crossings dictate that extreme care be exercised

19 by school bus drivers. Crossing railroad tracks represents one of the greatest hazards for school

20 buses. Mass casualties could occur in the event of a train-school bus incident. STOP, LOOK

21 AND LISTEN are the keys. The safe and legal way to cross a railroad track must be automatic.

22 All buses, loaded or empty, MUST STOP at all tracks, whether active or inactive, and specific

23 procedures must be followed before crossing any railroad at grade level.

24

25 When drivers are making stops for railroad crossings, they shall carefully observe traffic and

26 reduce their speed, far enough in advance of the stop, to avoid trapping other motorists in panic

27 stops or rear end collisions with the bus. To aid motorists, lightly tap the brakes as they approach

28 the crossing, four (4) or five (5) times and activate the four way flashers approximately 200 feet

29 before the crossing, and stop 15-50 feet away from the tracks. Generally, on multiple lane

30 roadways, no such stop should be made in the center or the left lane.

31

1 If the view of the track or tracks for a distance of one thousand feet (1000') in either direction is  
2 not clear, or obstructed in any way, no portion of the bus may be driven onto the tracks, until, by  
3 personal visual inspection, the driver has determined that no train is approaching. In no instance  
4 may a signal indicating safety be considered as conclusive or serve to override this precaution.  
5

6 In the event that a train has passed over the crossing, no bus driver shall drive his/her bus onto  
7 the track or tracks until the train has sufficiently cleared the crossing so that the driver is certain  
8 that no train, hidden by the first train, is approaching on an adjacent track. For improved hearing,  
9 the window shall be opened and all noise equipment (fans, radio, etc.) should be shut off until the  
10 bus has cleared the crossing.  
11

## 12 **CROSSINGS CONTROLLED BY SIGNALS**

13 In addition to the above-mentioned safety standards, the driver of a school bus that has stopped  
14 at any railroad track or tracks, at which there is (in operation) any flashing red lights and/or bell,  
15 shall not proceed across such track or tracks **UNLESS** authorized by a law enforcement officer  
16 or railroad representative. This does not relieve the driver of personal responsibility for safe  
17 crossing.  
18

19 If switching operations, or stopped trains, delay the use of the crossing unnecessarily, frequently  
20 or over extended periods of time, complaints should be made through proper channels to railroad  
21 management and traffic authorities. Each crossing has a phone number and location listed on a  
22 sign at the crossing.  
23

## 24 **CROSSINGS CONTROLLED BY CROSSING GATE OR BARRIER**

25 No bus driver shall drive their bus through, around or under any crossing gate or barrier at a  
26 railroad crossing while such gate or barrier is closed or being opened or closed. The driver must  
27 never accept a lack of movement as indicating that the device is either in or out of order or not  
28 properly working, but must always take a railroad grade crossing as a warning of danger and  
29 must not cross the tracks until he has ascertained that no train is approaching. The driver should  
30 treat multiple tracks as one (1) track only. Do not stop on the tracks and be sure to leave enough  
31 room if you have to stop after passing over the tracks. Add 15 feet to the length of the school bus

1 to determine an acceptable amount of containment or storage area crossing the tracks.

## 2 **WEATHER CONDITIONS**

3 During wet, stormy foggy, or any adverse weather, before placing part of the bus on the tracks,  
4 the driver must know that the crossing can be made safely. Any use of flares, in addition to  
5 warning signals or devices maintained at such railroad crossings, must be taken as an additional  
6 warning of danger.

## 8 **BEHAVIOR OF PASSENGERS**

9 When stopping for any railroad track at grade, all passengers must be silent until crossing is  
10 completed. Such signal for silence shall be given by the driver in a manner deemed suitable and  
11 appropriate. The passengers should understand the importance of their silence.

## 13 **CROSSING PROCEDURE**

14 The school bus driver will take the following steps in sequence each time he crosses a railroad  
15 track in a school bus. The easy way to remember is 5 Alive, as there are five steps to remember.

- 16 1. Approach with care. Slow down and prepare to stop.
  - 17 a. Tap the brakes at least four (4) or five (5) times when slowing.
  - 18 b. Activate the four-way flashers 200 feet before the railroad crossing.
- 19 2. Quiet
  - 20 a. Request silence.
  - 21 b. Turn off radios, fans, heaters, etc.
  - 22 c. Check traffic control devices.
- 23 3. Stop, look and listen
  - 24 a. Follow legal stopping procedure.
  - 25 b. Stop in a position that gives a clear view of the tracks in both directions. The front  
26 bumper must be no closer than fifteen feet (15') or further than fifty feet (50') from  
27 the track.
  - 28 c. Set the parking brake.
  - 29 d. Shift into neutral gear.
  - 30 e. Open the service door and driver's window.
  - 31 f. Look and listen through the open window and door.

- 1 4. Double Take
- 2 a. Look again in both directions.
- 3 b. Assess the containment area after the tracks to ensure there is enough room if the bus
- 4 needs to stop after the tracks.
- 5 5. Go! - Do not switch gears while crossing. Continuously scan the tracks both left and right. If
- 6 no indication of approaching train:
- 7 a. Close the door.
- 8 b. Shift into the lowest proper gear.
- 9 c. Release the parking brake.
- 10 d. Proceed quickly and smoothly across the track.
- 11 e. Turn off the hazards and noise abatement switch once the bus has cleared the
- 12 containment area.
- 13 f. Shift into drive and proceed with the route.

14  
15 If there is an approaching train:

- 16 1. Hold bus position;
- 17 2. After train passes wait fifteen (15) seconds.
- 18 3. Follow the crossing procedures.

19  
20 If there is a multi-track crossing:

- 21 1. Treat multiple tracks as one (1) track.
- 22 2. Make sure no train is approaching on any track from any direction.
- 23 3. After a train passes, wait fifteen (15) seconds and until other tracks become visible before
- 24 proceeding. A second train may be approaching from the opposite direction or on another
- 25 track.
- 26 4. Cross using crossing procedures previously discussed.

27  
28 If there is a stop after the tracks:

- 29 1. Complete the stop ensuring as long as there is a minimum of fifteen feet (15') between the
- 30 bus and the tracks.
- 31 2. If there is not sufficient room to leave a minimum of fifteen feet (15') between the bus and

1 the tracks, do not go. A train may approach while you are stopped.

2

### 3 **RAILROAD TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES**

#### 4 **FLASHER LIGHTS AND BELLS**

51. These are warnings of an approaching train. Vehicles may proceed only at the direction of a law  
6 enforcement officer or an authorized railroad representative.

7

#### 8 **GATES**

9 All traffic must obey these devices. Vehicles may proceed around the gates only at the direction  
10 of a law enforcement officer or an authorized railroad representative.

11

#### 12 **FLAGMAN**

13 Make a safety stop. Follow directions of the flagman as to when to cross. Cross using crossing  
14 procedures previously discussed.

15

#### 16 **PARKING THE SCHOOL BUS**

17 **Remember:** At no time is it recommended to back a school bus out into traffic flow. This is  
18 extremely dangerous and all options need to be explored to prevent backing the bus, this includes  
19 how the bus is parked. Always be mindful of what is going on around you while parking. Just as  
20 in a car, people will walk in front of and behind the bus without looking.

21

#### 22 **ANGLED PARKING**

- 23 1. When preparing to forward park in a 45 degree angle space, position the bus as far out in  
24 the driving lane as is practical.
- 25 2. Check the left, then right mirrors.
- 26 3. Signal for the right turn.
- 27 4. Drive forward past the right edge of the angle space and turn sharply so that the front  
28 bumper clears the left edge of the angle space.
- 29 5. Move forward slowly, watching the right mirror to see that the bus clears the right edge  
30 of the angle space.
- 31 6. Position the bus in the center of the space.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

## **LEFT SIDE PERPENDICULAR PARKING**

1. Drive past the parking stall.
2. Check the left mirror.
3. Shift to reverse.
4. Turn the wheels to the left.
5. Slowly back toward the stall, observing the left mirror – then right mirror for dual wheel positions.
6. Keep the left rear wheel close to the front corner of the stall.
7. Begin to straighten the wheels.
8. Use mirrors to monitor the direction of the bus.

## **PARALLEL PARKING**

1. Signal your intentions well ahead of time.
2. Position the bus next to and about three feet (3') from the vehicle parked in front of the space to be occupied.
3. Stop when the rear of the bus is even with the rear of the front vehicle.
4. Check the left mirror, right mirror and then left mirror again.
5. Shift into reverse.
6. Back slowly while turning the steering wheel slowly to the right until the right rear wheel is in line with the rear or the front parked vehicle.
7. Straighten the steering wheel when the entrance door is in line with the rear of the vehicle parked in the front space.
8. Back straight in until the front bumper reaches the rear bumper of the front vehicle.
9. Continue backing slowly while turning the steering wheel sharply to left when the front of the bus clears the rear of the vehicle.
10. Check the left mirror to position the bus.
11. Stop the bus just short of the vehicle parked behind.
12. Shift into drive.
13. Center the bus in the space no more than one foot (1') from the curb.

1 **HILL PARKING**

2 It is very important that the wheels be positioned properly when a bus is parked on a hill. The  
3 wheels must be positioned as follows:

- 4 • Parked on upgrade with curb, turn the wheels toward the center of the road.
- 5 • Parked on upgrade without a curb, turn the wheels away from the center of the road.
- 6 • Parked on downgrade with or without a curb, turn the wheels away from the center of the  
7 road.

8  
9 **LEAVING PARALLEL PARKING**

10 When the bus must be moved from the parking space, the following procedures must be used to  
11 back the bus as far as possible (requires depth perception skills, use spotter if possible).

- 12 1. Check the left mirror.
- 13 2. Put into drive or normal starting gear.
- 14 3. Turn steering wheel sharply to the left.
- 15 4. Check for traffic and signal left.
- 16 5. Enter the travel lane when clear.
- 17 6. Check mirrors for clearance of the front and right side of the bus.
- 18 7. Steer bus into the proper lane position.

19  
20 For leaving an angular or perpendicular parking space, the procedure is to use either forward or  
21 backward motion. Using forward motion, the driver moves the bus forward until the rear of the  
22 bus has cleared the other vehicle, using mirrors to check. Using backward motion to leave, the  
23 driver backs when traffic permits until the front of the bus clears the obstacles. At no time is it  
24 recommended to back a school bus out into traffic flow.

25  
26 **STARTING ON AN UPGRADE**

- 27 1. Manual shift:
  - 28 a. Press brake.
  - 29 b. Set parking brake.
  - 30 c. Press clutch.
  - 31 d. Place gearshift lever in first gear for four speed transmission or second gear (or



- 1 first gear if on a step upgrade) for five (5) speed.  
2 e. Release brake.  
3 f. Press accelerator.  
4 g. Release clutch to friction point, simultaneously releasing parking brake so that  
5 bus does not roll backward.  
6 h. Release clutch completely and press accelerator until bus gains adequate speed to  
7 shift into next higher gear.

8 2. Automatic Shift

- 9 a. Press brake.  
10 b. Set parking brake.  
11 c. Place gearshift level in drive (or low if on a steep upgrade).  
12 d. Gradually press accelerator.  
13 e. Release emergency brake.  
14

15 **STARTING ON A DOWNGRADE**

16 A. Manual Shift

- 17 a. Press Brake.  
18 b. Set parking brake.  
19 c. Press clutch.  
20 d. Place gearshift lever in first gear for four- speed-transmission or second gear for  
21 five speed.  
22 e. Release parking brake.  
23 f. Gradually release brake.  
24 g. Release clutch to friction point.  
25 h. Accelerate, if necessary, and gradually release clutch all the way.

26 B. Automatic Shifts on Downgrade

- 27 a. Press brake.  
28 b. Place gearshift lever in drive (or low if on a steep downgrade).  
29 c. Release brake and accelerate if necessary.  
30

31 **Instructor Note:**

1 Before a driver is ready to drive a school bus, you, the Driver trainer, must see that the following  
2 tasks have been accomplished:

- 3 • The driver must be in a position to be able to reach and operate the controls in comfort  
4 and see all the way around the bus.
- 5 • A driver shall use his/her right foot only when driving a bus equipped with an automatic  
6 transmission.
- 7 • The seat must be adjusted so that the driver's feet can operate the brake pedal, clutch,  
8 accelerator and light dimmer switch easily.
- 9 • All mirrors must be adjusted for optimum vision of traffic behind the bus, to both sides  
10 and across the front of the bus.
- 11 • Driver must fasten and adjust seat belt.
- 12 • If bus is unfamiliar, go through shift pattern with clutch depressed if the bus has a manual  
13 transmission.

14  
15 It is now time for the "Behind-the-Wheel" (BTW) driving training. It is composed of below  
16 topics. While on the road, the students are to be reminded of each area discussed during the class.  
17 Remember, as the instructor, this may be the first time the student has been on the road and they  
18 may need more than the minimum number of hours required. These are minimums, not  
19 maximums. Be patient, be understanding, and remember what it was like the first time you were  
20 on the road being trained.

21  
22 In setting up the in-bus driving, extreme care should be given to selecting the various roads  
23 which will be traveled and the places along the route where the evaluations will be made. The  
24 driver trainer must be fully aware of the various events which will take place along the route so  
25 that an accurate evaluation of driver performance can be made. Drivers being evaluated should at  
26 all times follow the law and good driving procedures. The evaluator must give instructions to the  
27 driver in sufficient time for the driver to lawfully execute the commands and comply with  
28 instructions.

29  
30 The behind the wheel training consists of:

- 31 1. Vehicle Operation (minimum 3 hours)

- 1 2. Vehicle-At-Speed (minimum 1 hour)
- 2 3. Bus Route Identification, Route Review and Instruction (minimum 2 hours)

DRAFT

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32

## CHAPTER 6 PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT

### **OBJECTIVES:**

The driver will be able to:

- establish a personable and acceptable student-driver relationship;
- establish and maintain a safe atmosphere on a school bus;
- provide leadership through driver performance;
- successfully apply behavior control techniques; and
- recognizing potential security issues

**Note to Instructor: At the end of this chapter, the driver should be taken back on the road for Vehicle Operation Part II portion of the training.**

### **INTRODUCTION**

Two-way communication between driver and student is essential for reducing incidents and improving the atmosphere on school buses. This means leadership from the driver, and pupil participation in the development of rules governing acceptable behavior. Existing state laws and regulations should be used as a foundation for the development of these rules.

Behavior problems on school buses vary from district to district and bus to bus. Some district buses have very few behavior problems while others may have tremendous behavior problems. Rules concerning behavior are essential on all bus routes. Through the districts code of conduct, each student should know and understand what is expected of them. As a role model, the school bus driver should strive to model the behavior expected to help build the relationship with the students.

**Students must know what is expected of them and the consequences for noncompliance.**

### **ATMOSPHERE**

What can be done to reduce or eliminate disruptive behavior on school buses? The best answer to this question is to develop and maintain an atmosphere conducive to

1 transportation safety.

2

### 3 **DEVELOPING RULES**

4 Input from the driver and the pupils should be the rule instead of the exception. This policy is  
5 suggested because people tend to obey and respect rules which they have had input in the  
6 development. Allow the students to participate in the making of the rules. Each driver should be  
7 allowed to have a five (5) minute rule meeting within the first two or three (2 or 3) days they  
8 drive.

9

10 A good starting point for development of the rules might be your local district transportation  
11 discipline rules, some examples are:

- 12 1. Students shall wait until signaled by the driver before boarding or leaving the school  
13 bus.
- 14 2. Students shall always remain seated when the bus is in motion.
- 15 3. School bus driver may assign seats.
- 16 4. Students shall not eat or drink while on the school bus.

17

18 It is important that each student know what is expected of them each day they ride a school bus.  
19 This should be discussed during the “rules meeting” with the students. Let the students  
20 participate in developing the rules and the consequences for not following them. Many of their  
21 recommendations will be similar to those of the drivers and at times will be tougher.

22

23 When they suggest a rule that is close to a state or local safety guideline, let them know that they  
24 have come up with a very important rule. At some point, when you feel your students have  
25 exhausted their reserve of suggested rules, provide them with the remaining rules which will  
26 govern the bus daily.

27

28 After the driver has finalized the riding rules for their school bus, they should introduce any  
29 additional district procedures for handling behavior problems and send them to the students’  
30 parents. They will be as effective as the driver is consistent. The driver must set and maintain the  
31 tone of the relationship with their students. This is not an easy task, a drivers’ attitude about this

1 responsibility will determine how successful they are.

2

3 Some of the ways to establish and maintain a positive tone are:

- 4 1. Remember names.
- 5 2. Provide a warm greeting.
- 6 3. Use a receptive voice tone.
- 7 4. Understand positive and negative feedback.
- 8 5. Provide good examples and be a role model.

9

### 10 **REMEMBER NAMES**

11 If a driver expects his/her name to be pronounced correctly and used politely, then they must first  
12 learn and use students' names properly. Learn their names quickly and show an interest in them.  
13 This is one of the best ways to break down barriers that may exist between driver and students.

14

### 15 **GREETINGS**

16 How a driver greets his/her students every morning will often be a factor in determining the  
17 degree of cooperation received from his/her students. The below examples also reflect the drivers  
18 concern for their students' health and safety.

19

- 20 1. A cheerful "HELLO"
- 21 2. "Good Morning"
- 22 3. "Good-Bye"
- 23 4. "Walk Carefully" or "Watch Your Step"

24

### 25 **VOICE TONE**

26 The driver's voice tone and what they say is very important. Think back to primary and  
27 secondary school years.

28

29 A driver should avoid a threatening or angry tone but should be firm when they inform pupils  
30 that he/she is concerned. They do this by changing from their usual conversation style to an  
31 appropriate, serious tone when the situation warrants it.

1 **POSITIVE REINFORCEMENT**

2 A bus driver can avoid causing a separation between themselves and their students if requests for  
3 certain behavior from them are in a positive manner. A driver should also promote positive  
4 responses. A positive response rewards a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior  
5 occurring again. Everyone likes positive attention. Children are known to need and demand  
6 attention and sometimes they don't get as much as they need. If a bus driver can give them  
7 positive attention, they can provide a positive model for social changes.

8

9 Examples of positive responses are:

- 10 1. verbal approval  
11 2. praise  
12 3. smiles  
13 4. positive attention

14

15 **NEGATIVE RESPONSES**

16 Pupils who cannot get positive attention may misbehave for the reward of negative attention  
17 from their peers and adults. A bus driver must control their temper and not put the disruptive  
18 individual in a position where they must back down in front of the group or win their respect by  
19 "mouthing off."

20

21 **LEADERSHIP**

22 Leadership is not the same as management. Leadership is a process that involves active  
23 communication, inspiration, and supervision. A leader needs to be authentic and be willing to  
24 listen. A leader is also willing to ask for help when they need it.

25

26 Students feed off of those around them. Being a leader and a positive role model for the students  
27 will earn a driver respect. A drivers' good personal hygiene and proper dress is also important. It  
28 shows they respect themselves and the position they hold. School bus drivers who are well  
29 groomed provide good personal appearance examples for the students. Students are more willing  
30 to listen to those that will listen to them and are willing to do the things they are asking the  
31 students to do. Don't ask the students to do anything you would not do yourself.

- 1 1. Adhere to the rules.
- 2 2. Be punctual.
- 3 3. Be courteous.
- 4 4. Be Fair.

## 6 **EVALUATING THE SITUATION**

7 As a driver, you may feel like you are constantly putting out fires and there seems to always be  
8 issues. You must stop and evaluate the situation. Is the problem yourself or the students? When  
9 you are in a good mood, you may be able to overlook minor infractions, but when you are in a  
10 bad mood, the same infraction might cause you to write the student up and provide consequences  
11 to the student. Going back to leadership, is this fair to the students?  
12

13 Personal circumstances can influence how a school bus driver handles behavior issues on  
14 their bus. School bus drivers should strive not to let personal issues or circumstances interfere  
15 with the safe operation of their bus. A driver should honestly evaluate their mood and how it is  
16 reflected in their attitude toward students. A school bus driver must make sure that it is  
17 students' actions which they are addressing instead of using their actions as an opportunity to  
18 vent their own frustrations. Personal frustrations should not be taken out on students.  
19

20 Students will risk punishment if there is an occasional chance of getting away with something.  
21 Being fair, firm and consistent is very important. Fairness and consistency will promote respect  
22 and cooperation, and a safe bus driver must have these. Inconsistent enforcement of rules will  
23 encourage students to challenge the driver. Always use good judgment in dealing with behavior  
24 issues.  
25

26 **Confidential information:** Confidential information is personal and often pertains to students'  
27 home situations. This information should not be shared with others unless it is of a nature that  
28 warrants it. Knowing the extent of some of these situations should motivate a driver to try harder  
29 to develop good relationships with the students who cause the most issues.  
30

## 31 **CONTROL TECHNIQUES**



- 1 There will be some issues which even the best school bus driver cannot handle alone.  
2 A bus driver should be able to control the situations using various techniques.
- 3 1. Establish a personable and acceptable student to driver relationship.
  - 4 2. Establish and maintain a safe atmosphere on a school bus.
  - 5 3. Provide leadership through driver performance.
  - 6 4. Successfully apply behavior control techniques.
  - 7 5. Analyze proper procedures and methods for dealing with individual and group  
8 behavior problems.

### 10 **INDIVIDUAL BEHAVIOR ISSUES**

11 Every district must have their own code of conduct and discipline policy. It is important to  
12 follow these policies. You always want to try and use the lowest form of action possible. Talking  
13 to the students, not yelling or judging, is a great start. For something that warrants being written  
14 up, the first or second offense might be a warning. The third or fourth offense may mean  
15 changing seats or asking the child to stay on the bus after arrival. Drivers need to be consistent  
16 with utilizing the policies and procedures and be fair to all students. In addition to talking to the  
17 student, disruptive behavior can be managed much better when the parents are informed about  
18 the behavior, before it becomes necessary to ask the child to come in with their parents for a  
19 conference.

### 21 **GROUP BEHAVIOR ISSUES**

22 Disruptive behavior from a group is normally more hazardous than an individual behavior  
23 issues. When a group ignores your request for order and the disturbance is distracting or  
24 hazardous, it is best to pull off the road, stop the bus and talk to the disruptive students. In this  
25 situation, it is extremely important to exert your role as the authority and the leader. You have an  
26 opportunity to utilize your control techniques appropriately and to be fair, firm, and consistent.  
27 At any time you feel you need assistance, call for help by following your district policy.

### 29 **STUDENT CONFERENCE**

30 Sometimes a student's behavior warrants a conference with them and their parent(s)/guardians.  
31 The conference should be conducted by an administrative official, most often the principal, of

1 the school and fact based, not emotion based. The primary objective of the conference is to  
2 involve the parent(s)/guardians in the specifics of the child's disruptive behavior, remind them of  
3 the safety aspect of appropriate behavior on a bus, and petition support from the  
4 parent(s)/guardians. Both the student and the parent(s)/guardians should understand the critical  
5 nature of the conference and the consequences that may follow should behavior not improve.

6

7 Suspension of riding privileges may be the next step after a conference. The length of the first  
8 suspension is usually one (1) to five (5) days. This should be spelled out in the district code of  
9 conduct policy. When a student is suspended, parent(s)/guardians are responsible for getting the  
10 student to and from school, for the duration of the suspension. Each student should receive the  
11 same consequence for the same infractions.

12

13 **Remember, it is vital that each driver be fair, firm and consistent in all interactions with**  
14 **the students who ride their bus.**

15

### 16 **ROLES OF LEADERSHIP**

17 A critical aspect of pupil transportation is pupil management. Most school bus drivers have no  
18 difficulty driving the school bus, the downfall comes when they have to interact with the  
19 students who ride their bus. Every board of education, superintendent and local pupil  
20 transportation director must ensure that a viable and effective program of pupil management is in  
21 place to assist the school bus driver with the task of safely transporting pupils to and from  
22 school and on school- related trips. Many schools have programs in place which includes  
23 Positive Behavior Intervention & Supports (PBIS) training. This training is implemented from  
24 the top down and includes involvement from the local Board of Education, superintendent,  
25 transportation director, principals, teachers, bus drivers, students, and parents.

26

27 Each of these groups has a vital role in developing and maintaining a viable and effective  
28 program of pupil management in their school system.

29

### 30 **LOCAL BOARD OF EDUCATION**

31 The role of the local board of education very important. The board is charged with the

1 responsibility for the welfare of all students. The policies that the board adopts have the effect  
2 of law and are the basis upon which the pupil management program will rest. Each driver  
3 should have complete knowledge of the board’s pupil management program and the steps  
4 involved in the discipline process.

5  
6 Once standards of conduct for pupils have been developed, it is the board’s responsibility to  
7 adopt them as policy. These policies and rules must be an integral part of the required Student  
8 Code of Conduct that each board must adopt. The board also plays a role in training school bus  
9 drivers by insisting that all drivers receive training in managing the pupils who ride their bus.  
10 The board should treat misconduct on the bus on the same level as in the classroom.

11  
12 **SUPERINTENDENT**  
13 The role of the local superintendent is critical to implementing a viable pupil management  
14 program. The superintendent must ensure that all principals and teachers understand their role in  
15 the pupil management program and that they fully support the program by seeing that all the  
16 provisions of the pupil management program are effectively enforced.

17  
18 **TRANSPORTATION DIRECTOR**  
19 The transportation director has a pivotal role in the development and implementation of the  
20 pupil management program. They must be the catalyst to ensure that a well-designed and  
21 functioning program of pupil management is in place. The transportation director runs the day  
22 to day operations of the pupil transportation department and provides the critical information and  
23 training needed to all roles, including the board.

24  
25 Utilizing the resources available, the local transportation director must analyze the situation that  
26 exists and involve all the groups in determining the components of the pupil management  
27 program. The local transportation director must determine the roles of each group and then  
28 ensure that each group understands their role and takes the necessary actions to effectively  
29 implement it.

30  
31 **PRINCIPAL**

1 The role of the principal is also a vital key to any pupil management program. The principal is  
2 the person who is responsible for the discipline of the students. The principal is the one who  
3 must ensure that the consequences listed in the pupil management program are carried out. They  
4 ensure that the children at their school fully understand their responsibilities when riding a  
5 school bus, as well as the actions that will result in losing their privilege of riding the school bus.  
6 The principal must support the school bus drivers just like they would support the teachers in  
7 their school.

8

### 9 **TEACHERS**

10 The teacher plays has a vital impact upon the effectiveness of the pupil management program.  
11 The teacher is responsible for providing the required instruction in the proper way to ride a  
12 school bus. A full explanation of the rules, regulations and requirements must be taught to the  
13 pupils by the teacher or the driver annually. The instructional aspect of the pupil management  
14 program is critical to ensuring that each pupil fully understands what is expected each time they  
15 ride a school bus. It is also vital that each pupil understand the consequences if they fail to  
16 adhere to the rules and regulations.

17

### 18 **BUS DRIVER**

19 The role of the school bus driver is the most pivotal role within any pupil management program.  
20 The school bus driver has the responsibility for ensuring that the program is effective. The school  
21 bus driver must be aware of all facets of the pupil management program and operate within the  
22 framework of the program in a **fair, firm, and consistent** manner. The school bus driver must  
23 work with the pupils on their bus to ensure that they fully understand what acceptable and  
24 unacceptable conduct is. The school bus driver must establish ground rules for their bus. These  
25 ground rules must be within the framework of the pupil management program. School bus  
26 drivers must develop the skills necessary to manage all situations and children that ride their  
27 school bus. An understanding of how pupils act at various ages is critical when dealing with  
28 children.

29

### 30 **STUDENT**

31 The role of the student a critical role. How the students act will dictate the effectiveness of the

1 pupil management program. Students must have a clear understanding of the expected conduct  
2 while on the school bus. Compliance with all the rules and regulations is a must if the student is  
3 to properly fulfill his/her role in the pupil management program.

#### 4 5 **PARENT/GUARDIAN**

6 The role of the parent/guardian is vital. They must know what is expected of their child in order  
7 to continue the privilege of riding the school bus. They must ensure that their child understands  
8 the rules and abides by them. The parent/guardian must support the bus driver in seeing that their  
9 child abides by the rules. By supporting the total pupil management program, the parent can  
10 ensure that their child retains the privilege of riding the school bus and is a safe rider.

#### 11 12 **MAINTAINING STUDENT BEHAVIOR**

13 Often time's misbehavior is the result of something that is going on in a child's life. There is  
14 usually a cause and it might be you or some other influence which causes the child to misbehave.  
15 It can be as simple as the tone of voice or a look that the child has been given or perceived to be  
16 given. Below are do's and don'ts when interacting with children who are displaying  
17 misbehavior.

#### 18 19 **BEST PRACTICES**

- 20 1. Look and commend good qualities and actions.
- 21 2. Be friendly. Always show an interest in what they are doing.
- 22 3. Give your command to stimulate action, not to check it. The response of the child is in  
23 action. Suggest an action which can be successfully obeyed. Rather than "DON'T DO  
24 THAT", say, "DO THIS".
- 25 4. Give a child time for reaction.
- 26 5. Have a reason for what you ask a child to do, and when possible, take time to give the  
27 reason so that he/she can see the point.
- 28 6. Be honest in what you say and do.
- 29 7. Be fair as it isn't punishment, but injustice that makes a child rebel against you.
- 30 8. Be constructive in your reaction.
- 31 9. Listen for suggestions and complaints from the children.

1 10. Follow-up cases which have been disciplined. Be certain that you still have the respect  
2 and confidence of the child.

3 11. Don't hold a student up to public ridicule. It is the surest way of creating a discipline  
4 problem.

5 12. Don't judge misconduct by how it annoys you, always maintain poise.

6 13. Don't lose your temper.

7 14. Don't take your personal feelings and prejudices out on the children.

8 15. Don't harass, bluff or be offensive.

9 16. Don't "pick" on every little thing a child does. Pick your battles. Sometimes, it is wiser to  
10 overlook some things.

11 17. **Never** strike a child.

### 12 13 **RESPONSIBILITIES**

14 Pupil management involves the combined effort of four (4) distinct groups of individuals. An  
15 effective program must have the support of the school district administration, school bus drivers,  
16 students and parents/guardians. Each school district should institute a comprehensive plan for the  
17 student's safety and wellbeing, as well as protecting the interests of all others involved in the  
18 program.

### 19 20 **SCHOOL DISTRICT**

21 1. Establish the policies and procedures by which the program functions.

22 2. Establish pupil regulations governing the behavior and safety of pupils while on the  
23 bus and at the bus stop.

24 3. Institute and administer an instructional program that teaches pupils proper conduct  
25 and safety procedures.

26 4. Conduct a training program for school bus drivers to ensure that all policies, procedures  
27 and regulations, and why they must be enforced, are understood.

28 5. Ensure that parents/guardians receive written copies of the bus rules and regulations.

29 Clearly establish their roles and obligations with respect to pupil promptness, attitude  
30 and behavior.

31 6. Initiate procedures to ensure open lines of communication and cooperation between

- 1 school administrators, bus company officials, state agencies and bus drivers.
- 2 7. Provide training in pupil management skills that extends beyond the scope of
- 3 enforcing rules and regulations.
- 4

5 **DRIVER**

- 6 1. Be familiar and abide all rules, policies and procedures effecting pupil transportation.
- 7 2. Establish rapport with each building administrator and work to ensure proper conduct and
- 8 communications.
- 9 3. Establish rapport with the students.
- 10 4. Instruct students in proper behavior, general procedures and evacuation drills.
- 11 5. Maintain order as a safety practice and stress proper behavior.
- 12 a. Minimize interior noise.
- 13 b. Control student movement.
- 14 c. Require an orderly entrance and exit.
- 15 d. Eliminate movement or potential movement of objects.
- 16 e. Require silence at railroads crossings.
- 17 f. Prohibit transportation of unauthorized materials.
- 18 6. Handle minor infractions through seat assignments or discussions with pupil students
- 19 7. Follow school district policy pertaining to misconduct and submit written reports on the
- 20 appropriate forms to the appropriate person.
- 21 8. Be aware that the driver represents the school system and should present a positive image
- 22 in dress, language and manner while on duty.
- 23 9. Be familiar with the assigned routes and designated school bus stops.
- 24

25 **STUDENTS**

- 26 Proper student behavior is important. The distraction of the driver can contribute to incidents.
- 27 Students and parents/guardians should be made aware of, and abide by, responsible regulations
- 28 to enhance safety. The consequences of unacceptable behavior **should be clearly understood**.
- 29 The following procedures will protect the pupil's rights and maintain order on the bus.
- 30 Pupils must:
- 31 1. Be aware that they are responsible for their actions and behavior.

- 1 2. Know what the rules and procedures are and abide by them.
- 2 3. Display proper respect for the rights and comforts of others.
- 3 4. Realize that school bus transportation can be denied if they do not conduct themselves
- 4 properly.
- 5 5. Be aware that any driver distraction is potentially hazardous to their safety.
- 6 6. Do not wear clothing or back packs with long hanging drawstrings or straps that can get
- 7 caught in the handrail or door of the bus.

8

### 9 **PARENT/GUARDIAN**

- 10 1. Become familiar with the district rules and policies, regulations and principles of school
- 11 bus safety.
- 12 2. Assist children in understanding the safety rules and encourage them to abide by them.
- 13 3. Recognize responsibilities for the actions of their children.
- 14 4. Support safe riding practices and reasonable discipline efforts.
- 15 5. Teach children the procedures for safely crossing the highway before boarding and
- 16 after leaving the bus.
- 17 6. Support procedures for emergency evacuation and procedures in an emergency as
- 18 adopted by the school district.
- 19 7. Support respect for rights and privileges of others.
- 20 8. Communicate safety concerns to school administrators.
- 21 9. Support all efforts to improve school bus safety.
- 22 10. Parents/guardians should not allow students to wear clothing or back packs with long
- 23 hanging drawstrings or straps on them to avoid the hazard of them getting caught on the
- 24 handrails or door of the bus.

25

### 26 **SECURITY AND CRIME**

27 It is important to be aware of potential security and crime threats to your bus and your bus route.  
28 Because of the daily routine in the morning and afternoon, a bus driver is often the first person to  
29 recognize that things may be different in an area. The safety of the students on the bus is the  
30 driver's first priority. Knowing the students and their parents or guardians will help you in the  
31 safety and security of the bus and bus stop. If something doesn't look right, report it and have it



1 looked into immediately.

2

3 Be on the lookout for suspicious packages, people, vehicles, and activities. When something  
4 doesn't look or feel right, report it.

5

6 By doing your daily pre-trip, walk-around and post trip inspections, and keeping your bus clean,  
7 you are able to become very familiar with your bus. This helps you to be aware of unattended  
8 packages or backpacks left on the bus. Recognizing and knowing what the students they  
9 typically bring on the bus allows you to know if a backpack or package might be suspicious and  
10 not left by a student.

11

12 What are some things that might be suspicious or just doesn't look right?

- 13 • A student with an instrument case that has never had one before.
- 14 • A student that is wearing really baggy clothes, but typically doesn't.
- 15 • A student wearing a big jacket on a hot day.

16

17 In each of these cases, talk to the student and contact dispatch. Be mindful of how you approach  
18 the student and asking them about your suspicions. What are some ways you can approach the  
19 student?

20

21 A student with an instrument case that has never had one before.

22 Ask the student about the instrument, such as, "I didn't know you played, that instrument.  
23 When did you start doing that? Can I see it?" Most students will open the case. If they  
24 don't, that is a red flag.

25

26 A student that is wearing really baggy clothes, but typically doesn't.

27 Ask the student how they are doing. At the same time, watch their hands and movements.  
28 Is the student trying not to move much because they have something hidden? Did they  
29 walk up to you different? Do they look scared or nervous? Knowing your students and  
30 their typical actions and reactions will help you navigate through this type of situation.

31

1 A student wearing a big jacket on a hot day.

2 Ask the student if they are okay as you noticed it was hot and they are wearing a heavy  
3 jacket. Ask if they are okay and as in the previous situation, watch their movements.

4

5 If a package or backpack is suspicious, contact 911.

6

7 When on your bus route, be aware of your surroundings and anything that might look out of  
8 place. There are some things you should be watching for at all times. Are there vehicles that are  
9 following the bus and stopping near stops? Are there people hanging around the bus stop that  
10 shouldn't be? Have you seen packages or items that look out of place? If something doesn't look  
11 right, call it in and don't let the students off of the bus. Follow your district procedures for these  
12 situation.

13

14 Do not allow unauthorized persons or parents to board the bus. Only those who are authorized by  
15 the superintendent should be on board. Anyone wanting to talk to the driver should go to the  
16 driver window.

17

18 Recognize the potential signs of criminal activity such as human trafficking, gang activity or  
19 drug activity. Knowing your students will help you know if something is wrong. Are students  
20 wearing expensive purses, phones, shoes, or other clothes they can't afford? Is an outgoing child  
21 suddenly extremely quiet and cautious about getting off the bus? Watch for signs such as tattoos,  
22 re-occurring injuries, and odd behaviors. Is someone following your students to the bus stop or  
23 do they getting off the bus and are with someone you don't recognize? You are required to report  
24 suspected abuse. Follow your district policy to reporting these types of situations.

25

26 Hijackings and attacks on school buses are very rare in the United States. In the event of a one  
27 does happen, activate the emergency button located on the two-way radio, if your bus is  
28 equipped, and notify your dispatch office immediately.

29

30 If your bus has a camera, speak to your transportation director or driver trainer about reviewing  
31 video of anything you might find suspicious. You may be seeing a pattern change and reviewing

1 the video can confirm it. You may be the one person in that child's life to notice and make a  
2 difference. By being the first and last person they see each and every day, your vigilance may  
3 save their life.

4  
5 Be familiar with and follow your district policy in the proper procedures for handling these and  
6 other situations that could be potentially serious threats.

7  
8 **Sample Policy**

9 School bus transportation is authorized only for pupils regularly enrolled in a public school in  
10 preschool through grade twelve. The transportation department provides you with the best  
11 equipment and drivers, and with the safest program possible. The following rules are provided  
12 for your information and compliance. We ask your cooperation.

13

14 **AT BUS STOPS**

- 15 1. Be on time. The bus cannot wait beyond its regular schedule for those who are tardy.  
16 Be at the bus stop five (5) minutes before your bus is scheduled to arrive.
- 17 2. Always cross in front of the bus at a safe distance (minimum 10-15 feet) in order to be  
18 seen by the bus driver. **Cross only on the driver's signal.**
- 19 3. Do not run toward or run across the street in front or behind a school bus while it is in  
20 motion.
- 21 4. Never stand in the road while waiting for the bus. Wait in an orderly line off the  
22 highway or street. Wait until the bus stops and the driver signals, and then walk to the  
23 door and board the bus in an orderly manner. **DO NO PUSH AND SHOVE.**
- 24 5. Pupils shall board the bus and immediately take a seat without disturbing other  
25 students. Do not exchange seats unless given permission by the driver.
- 26 6. Pupils shall not get on or off the bus or move about within the bus while it is in  
27 motion.
- 28 7. Pupils shall not wear clothing or backpacks with long strings that could become  
29 entangled in the bus handrail.
- 30 8. Avoid making excessive noise.
- 31 9. Remember that fighting at bus stops and on the way to and from school bus stops

1 is subject to disciplinary action (to be reported to the school principal).

### 3 **RIDING THE BUS**

- 4 1. The driver oversees the bus and its students. For your safety and the safety of others,  
5 follow directions the first time they are given.
- 6 2. Pupils shall ride their assigned bus, unless approved in writing by the principal or  
7 designee.
- 8 3. No persons other than those assigned to the bus shall be allowed to ride a school bus.
- 9 4. Report promptly to the driver any damage done to the bus. Persons causing damage may  
10 be expected to pay the full cost of repairs before riding privileges are restored.
- 11 5. Pupils shall not engage in any activity which might divert the driver's attention away  
12 from driving the bus and cause an accident, such as:
  - 13 a. improper behavior (including disobedience, foul language, fighting, pushing,  
14 shoving and similar offensive acts);
  - 15 b. smoking on the bus;
  - 16 c. eating or drinking on the bus;
  - 17 d. possessing guns, knives or other sharp objects;
  - 18 e. bringing animals on the bus (either live or preserved specimens);
  - 19 f. throwing articles or objects in or from the bus;
  - 20 g. tampering with mechanical equipment, accessories or controls of the bus;
  - 21 h. placing noncompliant musical instruments or other articles on the bus or at the  
22 door by the driver;
  - 23 i. obstructing the aisle in any manner;
  - 24 j. occupying more space in a seat than required (all items students bring on a bus  
25 must be held by the student and will not be placed on seats or in aisle);
  - 26 k. tracking mud or dirt onto the bus;
  - 27 l. littering the bus; or
  - 28 m. opening or closing windows without the driver's permission.
- 29  
30 6. Violations of the rules and regulations for riding a school bus shall result in the following  
31 actions:

- 1 a. First offense – bus driver will have a talk with the pupil.
- 2 b. Second offense – bus driver will move pupil to a front seat for two (2) weeks and
- 3 written notification will be sent to principal and parent/guardian. Pupil will not be
- 4 allowed back on the bus until notification form is returned to the driver.
- 5 c. Third offense – a misconduct report will be filed with the principal of the school
- 6 where the pupil attends. Pupil will not be allowed back on the bus until parent has
- 7 signed and pupil returns a copy of the report to the driver.
- 8 d. Fourth offense – a second misconduct report is filed, and the principal suspends
- 9 bus riding privileges for a minimum of five (5) days.
- 10 e. Fifth offense – a third misconduct report is filed, and the principal suspends bus
- 11 riding privileges for the remainder of the school year.
- 12
- 13 7. Some offenses are of such a serious nature that they can be deemed to warrant suspension
- 14 of bus riding privileges without following the procedure outlined above. Included in these
- 15 offenses are:
- 16 a. disruptive behavior;
- 17 b. use of tobacco in any form while on the bus;
- 18 c. use or possession of alcohol, drugs or narcotics;
- 19 d. failure to remain in seat when bus is in route and being a disruptive force;
- 20 e. use of profane, abusive or excessively loud language;
- 21 f. littering or throwing objects (no food, candy or beverages allowed on bus);
- 22 g. vandalism (at a minimum, may be made to pay for damages before privileges are
- 23 restored);
- 24 h. violation of any school or bus rule while waiting at any school to board the bus;
- 25 i. failure to follow the proper procedure when crossing the road;
- 26 j. using, operating or tampering with the operation or controls of the school bus;
- 27 k. failure to properly identify yourself the first time you are asked by the driver or
- 28 any school authority;
- 29 l. failure to ride only the assigned bus;
- 30 m. failure to comply with the authority of the bus driver on the regulations for pupils
- 31 riding the school bus;

- 1 n. fighting or scuffling; and/or
- 2 o. bringing guns, knives or any weapons on the bus.

3

#### 4 **BUS STOP**

- 5 1. Students are permitted to leave the bus only at the regular, designated stop. Any change
- 6 must be made with the parent's request in writing and approved by the signature of the
- 7 school principal or designee.
- 8 2. If a pupil lives on the opposite side of a road from the bus stop, the pupil should go to the
- 9 front of the bus and wait until the bus driver gives the signal to cross the road. NEVER
- 10 cross the road in the rear of a stopped school bus unless the bus has left, and it is a
- 11 marked pedestrian crossing.

12

#### 13 PARENT/GUARDIAN RESPONSIBILITIES

14 Any complaints of drivers, pupils or parent/guardians shall be reported promptly to the

15 principal or transportation director.

- 16 1. Report any misconduct on school buses to the principal.
- 17 2. Report all traffic hazards and the bus numbers of all buses observed being operated
- 18 carelessly to the transportation director.
- 19 3. Encourage students to observe all safety and conduct regulations established for the
- 20 safe and efficient operation of the school buses.
- 21 4. Help by exerting extreme caution when approaching bus stops, moving buses or
- 22 stopped buses.
- 23 5. Help supervise large numbers of children at bus stops.
- 24 6. Ensure students are at the bus stop five (5) minutes before the bus is scheduled to
- 25 arrive.

#### 26 **End of Sample Policy**

27

28

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

## CHAPTER 7 LOADING AND UNLOADING

### **OBJECTIVE**

- Understand bus stop placement.
- Explain the proper behavior for students while waiting for the school bus.
- Perform necessary and safe actions for loading/unloading passengers.

**Note to Instructor: At the end of this chapter, the driver should be taken back on the road for the Bus Route ID portion of the training.**

### **INTRODUCTION**

Each year, several fatalities occur at, or near, school bus stops across the country. In the school year (2013-2014), ten (10) such fatalities occurred in the following order:

1. six (6) were killed by passing vehicles
2. three (3) of the students killed by their own bus were struck at the front of the bus
3. one (1) of the students killed by their own bus were struck at the rear of the bus

The tragic loss of life in a loading or unloading incident receives less media attention than an incident that takes many lives at one time, however, it is just as painful to family, friends and loved ones.

The sequence described in this chapter for loading and unloading students should be used by all Kentucky State Certified Driver Training Instructors when training drivers in order to keep consistency throughout the state.

The transported student is in the greatest danger while waiting, boarding and exiting a school bus. The driver of the school bus must follow proper procedures in order to give the most reasonable and safe protection to those school students for which he/she is responsible. You will understand the placement of bus stops and learn the proper loading and unloading procedures.

1 **School Bus Stops**

2 School bus stops placed in locations that have the welfare and safety of the students in  
3 mind. School bus stops should not be changed unless directed by a competent authority,  
4 designated by the transportation director. The competent authority may include a driver trainer,  
5 director, or routing department. Stops are established by looking at many factors at each stop.  
6 Parents are responsible for ensuring their children get to and from the stop safely. While the  
7 location and schedule may be inconvenient for a parent or guardian, proper supervision shall be  
8 provided before the bus picks up a child and after the bus drops off the child. If your district  
9 requires a designated person to be at the bus stop to pick up the child, the parents shall make the  
10 proper arrangements and the bus driver shall not allow the child to go with someone other than  
11 the designated person.

12  
13 Crossing a road is the most dangerous part of riding a bus. In some districts, it may be policy to  
14 not have students cross a road or walk on streets without sidewalks, but in other districts this may  
15 be the only option. If a district has determined there are roads they do not want students to cross,  
16 no exceptions should be made, even by a parent’s request. The school has made the  
17 determination by doing an analysis of the area and the level of safety they are providing for the  
18 students and the parents cannot choose to provide less safety. Sometimes this may mean a longer  
19 bus ride for a student, but their safety is of the utmost concern.

20  
21 Door to door service is not required by state regulation. In fact, door to door service can be very  
22 inefficient. It is the responsibility of the school district to provide safe and efficient  
23 transportation to the students. Often times, providing door to door service is more costly to  
24 school districts. Some districts have set distance requirements for a road to be traveled.

25 Stops are to be placed so that they provide enough visibility for both pedestrians and drivers.  
26 There needs to be enough sight distance so drivers, bus drivers and students waiting at the stop  
27 all can see each other. Bus stops should never have a student walking beside the bus, from or  
28 toward the rear of the bus. Keep student foot traffic in front of you.

29  
30 **A school bus driver shall not change a bus stop without the prior consent of the competent**  
31 **authority.** A bus driver changing a bus stop to help a parent or student may seem advantageous,



1 but should an accident occur, you, the driver, may be held accountable if it was not an authorized  
2 stop. Students in Kentucky and across the nation have been injured or killed walking to an  
3 unauthorized stop. What seems harmless, may in fact be dangerous.

#### 4 **Urban Bus Stops**

5 It is not recommended for a bus stop to be placed at a busy intersection as it is hard to control  
6 traffic coming from the other directions. The stopped bus may confuse some drivers and they  
7 may not realize that the bus is loading and unloading.

8

9 For a stop placed before or after a turn, it is best to have it mid-block, approximately 2-3 bus  
10 lengths or 100 feet away from a corner, to give any turning vehicle time to react to the stopped  
11 bus. State statute KRS 189.450 also has restrictions, to include stopping should not be “within an  
12 intersection or on a crosswalk; within thirty (30) feet upon the approach to any flashing beacon,  
13 stop sign, or traffic control signal located at the side of a roadway; or within fifteen (15) feet of a  
14 fire hydrant”.

15

#### 16 **Rural Bus Stops**

17 A bus stop may be placed up to a mile away from the edge of the driveway. In cases where there  
18 is damage to a road or adverse weather, such as snow or flooding, the bus stop may be further.  
19 Many bus stops are established where students can wait in a driveway and move safely to the  
20 bus.

21

22 Speed, curves and hills, trees and other vegetation, approaching vehicles, and sun glare are all  
23 considerations that must be taken when stops are placed. There are no standardized distance  
24 measures that provide enough visibility nor are there formulas for computing an appropriate  
25 sight distance, but for a heavy truck traveling at 55 mph, they need at least 500 feet for reaction  
26 time and stopping distance.

27

28 Having a "School Bus Stop Ahead" sign does not make the stop safe, but it is a warning to other  
29 drivers that there is a stop in a blind area. It should be installed in advance of locations where a  
30 school bus, when stopped to pick up or discharge passengers, is not visible to road users for an  
31 adequate distance and where there is no opportunity to relocate the school bus stop to provide

1 adequate sight distance. Extreme caution shall be utilized in areas where visibility may be  
2 limited for drivers in either direction.

3

4 As stated previously, a school bus driver shall not change a bus stop without the prior consent of  
5 the competent authority. If there is a stop that has potential hazards and you feel the stop is  
6 unsafe, contact the competent authority to discuss further. Just because a stop has always been  
7 there doesn't mean factors haven't changed over time and the stop may need to be reviewed for  
8 safety.

9

10

DRAFT

1 **LOADING SUMMARY**

2 Following is the summarization of the step-by-step procedures. When the bus is stopped, the  
3 driver will have their foot on the service brake at all times.

4 Loading students at the bus stop should be done in the following manner:

- 5 • Slow down well in advance of the designated stop. Perform a visual scan. Tap the service  
6 brake three to five times to activate the brake lights and alert motorists of your intention  
7 to stop. Perform a visual scan to include mirrors.
- 8 • Activate the yellow-amber warning lights at least one hundred fifty to two hundred feet  
9 (four to six bus lengths) from the loading zone. Check the yellow/amber indicator light to  
10 ensure that the lights are functioning properly.
- 11 • When the bus has completely stopped, the driver shall keep their foot on the service  
12 break, set the park brake, place the transmission selector in park or neutral, perform a  
13 visual scan to include mirrors and activate the stop arm, red flashing loading and crossing  
14 gate if equipped. The driver shall check the red indicator light to ensure the red loading  
15 are operating and the stop arm has opened out. Continue performing a visual scan.
  - 16 ○ **NOTE: The stop arm will be used at all times when loading or unloading**  
17 **students. This includes while on school property.**
- 18 • Stop back from loading zone ten feet (10'), and have the students walk to the bus. A bus  
19 driver should not stop a school bus within an intersection or within thirty feet (30') of any  
20 flashing beacon, stop sign or traffic control signal located at the side of a roadway.
- 21 • Make sure all traffic has stopped before loading. You should continue to be aware of the  
22 traffic environment while loading the students (visual scan).
- 23 • Students who live on the opposite side of the roadway from the bus stop are not to cross  
24 the roadway until the bus arrives on the scene, stops traffic with lights and the stop arm  
25 and the driver signals to cross at a distance of ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front of the  
26 bus. The driver and students shall have eye contact until the road crossing is complete.
- 27 • When loading students set the parking brake and place the transmission in park or  
28 neutral.
- 29 • When buses are being loaded or unloaded, the driver shall be on the bus.
- 30 • While a school bus is parked to load or unload students, another school bus should not  
31 pass. School bus drivers should set the example for all other drivers. This includes when

- 1 the bus is on school grounds.
- 2 • Students should enter the bus in an orderly manner. They should use the handrail when
- 3 loading. Do not allow students to push, shove or carry unauthorized objects aboard.
- 4 • **NOTE: Beware of clothing and/or accessories that may get caught in the handrail**
- 5 **area prior to proceeding.**
- 6 • Make sure students are properly seated, then close the door, canceling the stop arm and
- 7 lights. With foot on service brake, perform a visual scan of traffic and of the danger zone
- 8 around the bus.
- 9 • Keeping foot on the service break, place the bus in proper gear and, when safe to do so,
- 10 release the park brake and proceed while continuing to perform a visual scan.
- 11 ○ **NOTE: Students are to remain seated at all times.**

DRAFT

1 **20 STEP LOADING PROCEDURE**

2

3 **APPROACH**

4 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 1**

5 Perform a visual scan – look for pedestrians and vehicular traffic – as you reduce your  
6 speed. Check mirrors.

7 **TAP BRAKES – STEP 2**

8 Lightly apply service brake in order to activate the brake lights to warn motorists of your  
9 intended stop. Should tap brake four to five times.

10 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 3**

11 Perform a visual scan – looking for pedestrians or vehicular traffic that may converge on  
12 the loading area. Check mirrors.

13 **WARNING LIGHTS – STEP 4**

14 Activate the warning lights two hundred feet (200'), which is four to six bus lengths,  
15 from the loading area. Check the yellow indicator light to ensure warning lights are  
16 operating.

17

18 **STOP**

19 **SET PARK BRAKE – STEP 5**

20 Bring the bus to a complete stop ten feet (10') from the nearest student. Keep foot on the  
21 service brake. Set the park brake.

22 **GEAR – STEP 6**

23 Place gear selector in park or neutral.

24 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 7**

25 Perform a visual scan for pedestrians and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.

26 **STOP ARM AND LIGHTS – STEP 8 (REVIEW KRS 189.375)**

27 **STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED**

28 When safe to do so, activate the red loading lights by activating the stop arm.

29 Check the red indicator light to ensure the red loading lights are operating. Visually  
30 check to see that the stop arm and crossing gate, if equipped, has opened out.

31

1 **LOADING**

2 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 9**

3 Perform a visual scan to ensure all vehicular traffic has stopped. Check mirrors.

4 **OPEN SERVICE DOOR – STEP 10**

5 Students shall board the bus in an orderly manner. All students must wait until the bus  
6 arrives at the stop and driver signals the student(s) to board. Those students who must  
7 cross the road shall do so at least ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front of the bus.

8 **Every effort shall be made to eliminate students crossing the road.**

9 **HANDRAIL – STEP 11**

10 Instruct students to use the handrail as they board the bus if needed.

11 **COUNT STUDENTS – STEP 12**

12 The bus driver shall “count” and greet the students as they board the bus.

13 **SEATING – STEP 13**

14 Students shall go directly to their seats after boarding the bus. Ensure students are seated.

15

16 **DOOR**

17 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 14**

18 The driver shall perform a visual scan to ensure that all students have boarded the bus –  
19 checking the danger zone around the bus for pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check  
20 mirrors.

21 **CLOSE SERVICE DOOR – STEP 15**

22 After the driver ascertains that it is safe to do so, he/she may close the service door.

23 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 16**

24 The driver shall perform a visual scan and shall double check the step-well to ensure that  
25 no students are stuck in the door, handrail, etc.

26 **DEACTIVATE LOADING LIGHTS/STOP ARM – STEP 17**

27 The driver may now deactivate the loading lights. The stop arm will come back in at this  
28 time.

29 **GEAR – STEP 18**

30 Place the gear selector in proper gear.

31 **PARK BRAKE – STEP 19**

1 With his/her foot on the service brake, the driver may release the park brake.

2 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 20**

3 The driver shall perform another visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check  
4 mirrors. Check the crossing gate, if equipped. When safe to do so, proceed.

5

DRAFT

1 **LOADING SEQUENCE**

2 The following step-by-step sequence should be used when loading students:

3

4 **APPROACH**

5 STEP 1 VISUAL SCAN

6 STEP 2 TAP BRAKES

7 STEP 3 VISUAL SCAN

8 STEP 4 WARNING LIGHTS

9

10 **STOP**

11 STEP 5 SET PARK BRAKE

12 STEP 6 GEAR

13 STEP 7 VISUAL SCAN

14 STEP 8 STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF E  
15 EQUIPPED.

16 **LOADING**

17 STEP 9 VISUAL SCAN

18 STEP 10 OPEN SERVICE DOOR STEP

19 STEP 11 HANDRAIL

20 STEP 12 "COUNT" AND GREET STUDENTS

21 STEP 13 SEATING

22

23 **DOOR**

24 STEP 14 VISUAL SCAN

25 STEP 15 CLOSE SERVICE DOOR

26 STEP 16 VISUAL SCAN

27 STEP 17 DEACTIVATE LOADING LIGHTS/STOP ARM

28 STEP 18 PLACE INTO PROPER GEAR

29 STEP 19 RELEASE PARK BRAKE

30 STEP 20 VISUAL SCAN



1 **UNLOADING SUMMARY**

2 Following is the summarization of the step-by-step procedures.

3 Unloading students at the bus stop should be done in the following manner:

4 • Reduce speed well in advance of the designated stop as you perform a visual scan. Tap the  
5 service brake three to five times to activate brake lights and alert motorists of your intention  
6 to stop while continuing to perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic including  
7 checking the mirrors.

8 • Activate the warning lights at least two hundred feet (200'), which is four to six bus lengths,  
9 from the unloading zone. Check the indicator light to ensure the warning lights are operating.

10 • When the bus has completely stopped, the driver shall keep their foot on the service break,  
11 set the park brake; place the transmission in park or neutral; perform a visual scan of traffic;  
12 and, when safe to do so, activate the stop arm, red flashing loading lights and crossing gate if  
13 equipped. The driver shall check the red indicator light to ensure that the red loading lights  
14 are functioning and also visually check that the stop arm has opened out.

15 ○ **NOTE: The stop arm shall be used at all times when loading or unloading**  
16 **students. This includes while on school property.**

17 • Students should remain seated until the bus comes to a complete stop. You should not stop a  
18 bus within an intersection or within thirty feet (30') of any flashing beacon, stop sign or  
19 traffic control signal located at the side of a roadway.

20 • The driver shall perform a visual traffic scan, including mirrors, and when safe to do so, open  
21 the service door.

22 • The driver shall not permit the student(s) to exit the bus until traffic has come to a complete  
23 stop. The driver should then continue to be aware of the traffic environment while unloading  
24 the students.

25 • Students should exit the bus in an orderly manner. They should use the handrail when  
26 unloading. Do not allow the students to push or shove. Check the step well and service area  
27 outside the bus to ensure that no student is caught in the handrail or in the service door area  
28 by clothing, backpack strings or straps, etc.

29 • When buses are being loaded or unloaded, the driver shall be on the bus.

30 • While a school bus is parked to load or unload students, other school buses should not pass.

31 School bus drivers should set the example for all other drivers. This includes during the time

1 the bus is parked on school grounds.

2 • Do not permit the pupils to get off any place except their regular stop unless they have  
3 written permission, authorized with the signature of the school administrator and proper date  
4 and time.

5 • Count students as they leave (and enter) the bus and visually check again before you pull  
6 away. Check all mirrors to see if students have cleared the roadway and that the danger zone  
7 area around the bus is free of pedestrians. You must be sure you are clear to leave the bus  
8 stop without endangering any students.

9 • Students who live on the opposite side of the roadway shall wait for the driver to signal when  
10 it is safe to cross the roadway. The student(s) shall cross ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front  
11 of the bus, in order to have eye contact with the driver until the roadway crossing is  
12 complete.

13 • Every effort must be made to eliminate students crossing any roadways. KRS 189.375 states  
14 in part, “however, No driver shall stop a school bus or church bus and allow it to remain  
15 standing for the purpose of discharging passengers to the opposite side of the road on a  
16 highway of four (4) or more lanes, provided that this provision does not prohibit the  
17 discharging of passengers at a marked pedestrian crossing.”

1 **20 STEP UNLOADING PROCEDURE**

2

3 **APPROACH**

4 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 1**

5 Perform a visual scan – look for pedestrian and vehicular traffic – reducing speed. Check  
6 mirrors.

7 **TAP BRAKES – STEP 2**

8 Lightly apply the service brake (three to five times) in order to activate the brake lights to  
9 warn motorists of your intention to stop.

10 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 3**

11 Perform a visual scan for pedestrian or vehicular traffic that may converge into the  
12 loading area. Check mirrors.

13 **WARNING LIGHTS – STEP 4**

14 Activate the warning lights two hundred feet (200') which is four to six (4-6) bus lengths,  
15 from the loading area. Check yellow/amber indicator light to ensure that the warning  
16 lights are operating.

17

18 **STOP**

19 **PARK BRAKE – STEP 5**

20 Bring bus to complete stop, keep foot on the service break, and set park brake.

21 **GEAR – STEP 6**

22 Place the gear selector in park or neutral.

23 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 7**

24 Perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.

25 **STOP ARM AND LIGHTS– STEP 8**

26 **STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED**

27 When safe to do so, activate the red loading lights by activating the stop arm. Check the red  
28 indicator light to ensure the red loading lights are operating. Visually check to see that the stop  
29 arm and crossing gate, if equipped, has opened out.

30

31

1 **EXIT**

2 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 9**

3 Perform a visual scan, making sure that all traffic has come to a complete stop. Check  
4 mirrors.

5 **OPEN SERVICE DOOR –STEP 10**

6 When safe to do so, open the service door all the way.

7 **COUNT – STEP 11**

8 Count the students as they exit the bus. All students must wait until the driver signals  
9 him/her to exit the bus. If a student must cross the road, he/she must cross ten to fifteen  
10 feet (10' to 15') in front of the bus after being signaled to cross by the school bus driver.

11 **HANDRAIL – STEP 12**

12 Students shall use the handrail as they exit the bus. The driver shall be sure that no  
13 student has snagged any object or piece of clothing in the handrail.

14 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 13**

15 The driver shall perform a visual scan to ensure that all students have debarked the bus  
16 and have safely cleared the roadway, checking the danger zone around the bus for  
17 pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.

18 **ALL CLEAR – STEP 14**

19

20 **DOOR**

21 **CLOSE SERVICE DOOR – STEP 15**

22 When safe to do so, the driver will close the service door. The driver shall double check  
23 the step-well to insure that no students are stuck in the door, handrail, etc.

24 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 16**

25 The driver shall perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.

26 **DEACTIVATE LOADING LIGHTS/STOP ARM – STEP 17**

27 The driver may now deactivate the loading lights. The stop arm will come back in at this  
28 time.

29 **GEAR – STEP 18**

30 When safe to do so, the driver will place the gear selector in the proper gear position.

31 **PARK BRAKE – STEP 19**

1 With foot on service brake, the driver will release the park brake.

2 **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 20**

3 Driver shall perform a visual scan of traffic and check mirrors. Check the crossing gate, if  
4 equipped. When safe to do, proceed with route.

5

6

DRAFT

1 **UNLOADING SEQUENCE**

2 **Note to Instructor:** Point out that one third of all steps are performing visual scans

3

4 The following sequence shall be used when unloading students:

5 **APPROACH**

6 STEP 1 VISUAL SCAN

7 STEP 2 TAP BRAKES

8 STEP 3 VISUAL SCAN

9 STEP 4 WARNING LIGHTS

10

11 **STOP**

12 STEP 5 PARK BRAKE

13 STEP 6 GEAR

14 STEP 7 VISUAL SCAN

15 STEP 8 STOP ARM , LOADING LIGHTS, AND CROSSING GATES

16

17 **EXIT**

18 STEP 9 VISUAL SCAN

19 STEP 10 OPEN SERVICE DOOR

20 STEP 11 COUNT STUDENTS

21 STEP 12 HANDRAIL

22 STEP 13 VISUAL SCAN

23 STEP 14 ALL CLEAR

24

25 **DOOR**

26 STEP 15 CLOSE SERVICE DOOR

27 STEP 16 DEACTIVATE LOADING LIGHTS

28 STEP 17 VISUAL SCAN

29 STEP 18 GEAR

30 STEP 19 PARK BRAKE

31 STEP 20 VISUAL SCAN

1 **BUS STOP BEHAVIOR**

2 Most fatalities occur outside of the school bus. Darkness in the early morning and active  
3 youngsters waiting for the school bus combine to make this time of day especially dangerous. It  
4 is a school bus driver's duty, at the earliest possible opportunity in the beginning of the school  
5 year, to instruct his/her students on how and where to wait for a school bus. A student waiting for  
6 the school bus should:

- 7 1. Arrive five minutes before time his/her bus is to arrive. The bus driver cannot wait.
- 8 2. Wait well away from the street or road.
- 9 3. Wait on the side of the street on which the student(s) lives. The student(s) should not  
10 cross the street until the bus comes to a complete stop, traffic in both directions is  
11 controlled and the driver signals the student(s) to cross. The student(s) shall cross in front  
12 of the bus at a distance approximately ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in order for the driver  
13 to see him/her, signal the student and maintain eye contact until the road crossing is  
14 complete.
- 15 4. Respect the property of others; avoid walking on the grass, throwing trash down, picking  
16 flowers, damaging shrubs, etc.
- 17 5. Fighting at bus stops and on the way to and from school is subject to local Board  
18 disciplinary action.
- 19 6. Keep belongings out of the roadway.
- 20 7. **NOTE: If a student should drop an object in the roadway, he/she should never stop  
21 and pick it up until the driver is made aware and gives permission.**
- 22 8. Avoid loud behavior. Proper behavior is expected at all times.
- 23 9. Line up in a single line, well away from the street (at least two big steps from the curb)  
24 when the bus is sighted.
- 25 10. Approach the bus after it stops and board in an orderly manner, after the driver's signal,  
26 using the handrail.
- 27 11. Go immediately to his/her seat and sit down facing forward. The bus driver cannot start  
28 the bus until everyone is seated.

29  
30 **The bus driver has the responsibility of controlling traffic while loading and unloading the**  
31 **students on his/her bus. He/she has to minimize the risks involved with their loading. To do**  
32 **this, he/she must correctly follow the above-mentioned guidelines.**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8

## CHAPTER 8 EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS

9

### **OBJECTIVE**

- 10
- 11 • Identify the necessary information needed in planning a field trip.
  - 12 • Handle emergencies while on field trips.
  - 13 • Leaders and their responsibilities.
- 14

15

### **INTRODUCTION**

16 Numerous problems can arise when driving on field trips – problems such as selecting the wrong  
17 route, running out of fuel, arriving late or not at all. Student issues can also arise because of no  
18 food or rest stops. These can also cause the driver to have an unhappy or more importantly an  
19 unsafe trip. The field trip or activity trip is a special and exciting time for all concerned, but it  
20 should also be a safe time. The best way to ensure a safe and happy trip is through pre-planning.

21 Following are items to be discussed in this chapter:

- 22 • Times
  - 23 • Route Planning
  - 24 • Emergency Preparations
  - 25 • Responsibilities
  - 26 • Problem Causing Situations
- 27

28

### **ARRIVAL AND DEPARTURE TIMES**

29 Many field trips take drivers out of their district. If problems arise, the driver will probably have  
30 a more difficult time in getting assistance. Problems, therefore, take on a more critical nature.

31 Without planning, minor problems can become major ones.

32 Have the students arrive at the designated meeting location thirty (30) minutes prior to departure  
33 for information concerning the field trip, practicing emergency evacuations, explaining planned  
34 stops, expected behavior, etc.



1 Departure times and locations are important. Drivers have to know the exact time they are to  
2 arrive at the school, the exact location for the student pickup and the exact time of departure for  
3 the event.

4 The same is true for arriving at the event. The exact arrival time and location must be known.  
5 For the return trip, drivers must know when they are to arrive at the student pickup spot, the  
6 exact location and when to depart.

7  
8 It is also important that drivers know their expected arrival time and location back at the school  
9 so that parents know when and where to pick up their children.

10

### 11 **ROUTE PLANNING**

12 Since departure and arrival times are important, it is necessary for the driver to plan routes in  
13 enough detail that travel times can be reasonably estimated. The planned route should include  
14 both a primary route and a secondary route, in case of a traffic tie-up or detour on the primary  
15 route. Be aware that if using a Global Positioning System (GPS) or other trip routing software,  
16 you should use the most fuel-efficient route, but also be aware of any restrictions such as bridge  
17 weights or overpass heights that you may encounter.

18

19 Special stops along the way should also be planned. These would include stops for food, fuel and  
20 comfort (refer to 702 KAR 5:080, Section 17, “Fueling”). It is best if they can all be  
21 accomplished in one stop rather than a separate one for each. If a fuel stop is required the driver  
22 must have adequate means to pay for the fuel whether by school fuel card, cash, etc. When  
23 estimating travel time, time estimates for these stops will have to be included.

24

25 A driver should know any special situations along the way. Bridges and tunnels would be good  
26 examples. The questions the driver might ask is: “Is there anything along the way that I cannot  
27 get over, under or through?”

28

29 Tolls are another consideration. Does the route cross any toll bridge or use a toll road? If it does,  
30 the driver will need enough money to pay these tolls.

31

1 Frequently, at special events, there is a special parking area for buses. The driver needs to know  
2 if there is such a special area and where it is located.

3  
4 A final consideration is any special instructions. Is there anything else you need to know for a  
5 safe and happy trip? Drivers should check with the transportation supervisor for special  
6 conditions or situations.

7  
8 **EMERGENCY PREPARATIONS**

9 Many things can go wrong while on any trip. These mishaps can range from very minor events to  
10 major catastrophes. On a field trip, a mishap of any degree of seriousness is always more  
11 difficult to handle because drivers typically are not as familiar with the area as they are with their  
12 own route, and assistance may be more difficult to obtain.

13  
14 Drivers should have on hand several phone numbers should they need to get in touch with key  
15 supervisory personnel. This would include the school office and transportation supervisor. Phone  
16 numbers of where these individuals can be reached in the evening, as well as their normal office  
17 phone number should be obtained.

18  
19 The driver should have available the name, address and phone number of the insurance carrier  
20 should an incident occur. This information should be on each bus the district operates.

21  
22 A two-way radio under emergency conditions is almost a necessity. If possible, a radio should be  
23 carried so the driver has a means to contact the school or emergency agencies to request  
24 assistance. If a cell phone is taken, the driver should stop the bus in a safe location before use.

25  
26 Some of the students may have a special medical need. These students and their medical needs  
27 should be known before the trip begins. Only in this way can any medical issues be planned for  
28 in advance.

29  
30 Because of the excitement of the trip, and its length, it is possible that a student might become ill.  
31 Drivers need to know how to handle common illnesses and plan for them in advance.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**RESPONSIBILITIES**

Several different types of groups participate in field or activity trips. Each group may have one (1) or more different types of group leaders. Typical groups and group leaders would include:

- team/coach;
- class/teacher; or
- group/chaperons.

On field and activity trips, responsibilities are shared between the driver and the group leader and/or chaperone. The transportation supervisor also has certain responsibilities to determine whether road conditions are such that it would be safe or practical to travel.

**DRIVER**

- Obey all safety regulations.
- Review with the students the emergency evacuation before the beginning of the trip or if needed conduct an evacuation drill.
- Maintain passenger control.
- Control emergency situations.
- Maintain safe vehicle condition.
- Select rest, food and fuel stops.
- Ensure the eight (8) way warning lights, stop arm and crossing control arm are activated at any time students are loading or unloading.
- Ensure any and all dunnage is properly secured.
- Head counts.

**GROUP LEADERS AND/OR CHAPERONES**

KRS 161.185 requires that a certified or classified member of the staff accompanies students on school-sponsored or endorsed trips. There is a special exception that should be reviewed for athletic trips. There needs to be a chaperone on each bus as the chaperone will know the students and will be able to assist with their excitement.

1 The group leader/chaperones role is to:

- 2 • Relay trip plans and safety precautions.
- 3 • Provide passenger information.
- 4 • Maintain passenger control.
- 5 • Provide supervision at stops.
- 6 • Field trip activity.
- 7 • Head counts.
- 8 • Provide passenger instructions.
- 9 • Properly group students together.

10

11 **DIRECTOR/SUPERVISOR**

12 Vehicle(s) and driver ability. Remember on all out of district trips, the bus can only be at 2/3  
13 capacity when transporting middle school or high school students.

14

15 The director/supervisor role is to:

16

17 Provide necessary time for planning.

18 Know where to communicate with driver in emergency situations.

19

20 Ensure the driver and chaperones are aware that any and all equipment, luggage, coolers, or other  
21 items are transported under the bus. These items shall not be on the bus as they become  
22 extremely dangerous in an accident. At no time is a trailer to be towed by the bus while students  
23 are on board. This should be towed by a separate vehicle.

24

25 **PROBLEM CAUSING SITUATIONS**

26 Problems may arise while on a field or activity trip because of the nature and length of the trip.

27 Unless plans are made and precautions taken, passenger behavior problems may arise which  
28 could get out of control.

29

30 The following conditions should be identified:

31

1 **Fatigue** – the driver should plan to have enough rest and comfort stops to avoid problems arising  
2 from this condition. There should be no more than ninety (90) minutes between stops. Driver  
3 fatigue should also be considered.

4  
5 **Excitability** – drivers should recognize that this will occur because of the nature of the trip. An  
6 opportunity should be provided for students to vent some of this excitement before an effort is  
7 made to restrain them. The group leader or chaperone should handle problems arising from these  
8 situations.

9  
10 **Depression** – driver should recognize that this condition could occur and call it to the attention  
11 of the group leader or chaperone. The group leader or chaperone should be alerted and deal with  
12 this condition on a one-to- one basis with the student(s).

13  
14 **Discomfort** – the driver should be alerted for conditions which could lead to student discomfort.  
15 The temperature of the bus should be closely monitored, and enough fresh air should be  
16 provided.

17  
18 **Lack of understanding**– driver should discuss with the group leader or the chaperone the  
19 guidelines that are to be followed during the field trip. The group leader or chaperone and the  
20 driver should discuss these with the students before the trip begins.

## 21 22 **SUMMARY**

23 During this unit, we have examined several topics which are necessary to consider when  
24 planning and conducting any field trip. If adequate attention is paid to planning the trip and  
25 precautions are taken to avoid problem producing situations, the field trip should be a pleasant  
26 experience for all concerned. However, without it, things can easily get out of hand. Be prepared  
27 and enjoy a pleasant trip.

28



1 rules should be explained simply and presented in manner appropriate with the student's  
2 cognitive level. Be prepared to review these rules frequently as some students may need many  
3 reminders to be successful. The bus ride to and from school can be a pleasant experience which a  
4 child anticipates eagerly, or it can become a stressful experience. The driver should be thoughtful  
5 and careful about such routine matters as assigning a seat or seatmate, the presentation and  
6 purpose of a seatbelt and student management.

7  
8 Special needs students may have different needs compared to their typical peers. This can be a  
9 challenge to student transporters. Below is a guide that can assist. Remember, each child is  
10 unique and may require some deviation to the guide.

11  
12 **REMEMBER:**

- 13 • Be firm – but gentle.
- 14 • Be patient – but persistent.
- 15 • Always be consistent and fair.
- 16 • Be flexible when possible.

17  
18 The driver's primary purpose is to take children to and from school safely and dependably.  
19 While allowances are made for specific situations, the safety of the students is the number one  
20 consideration.

21  
22 **COMMUNICATION**

23 It is difficult to give guidelines for handling all situations. As a driver for special needs students,  
24 there will be specific training provided for each student you transport. You should know about  
25 the needs and abilities of the students, and the best way to learn these is through communication  
26 with school staff.

27  
28 Below are general expectations that will assist you with working through any communication  
29 issues you may come across. You will want to work with the following people to help resolve  
30 them.

- 31 • School nurse

- 1 • Teachers, they may have insight to your issue
- 2 • Parents
- 3 • Student
- 4 • School specialist

5

## 6 **PARENT – DRIVER**

7 Drivers and parents should discuss safety rules on the bus, special equipment usage, schedules  
8 and transporting medication as various needs require various plans.

9

## 10 **LIFTING AND/OR CARRYING STUDENTS**

11 There are several safe and effective ways to lift a child. The driver will be able to learn these  
12 techniques by conversation and application with school specialists. These techniques will vary  
13 depending on each child’s needs.

14

## 15 **SPECIAL EQUIPMENT**

16 Due to varied disabling conditions, all seats have rolled padded tops and sides to help reduce  
17 chances of pupil injury on panic stops. Foam seats provide more secure seating. Modesty panels  
18 and stanchion posts should be added. Seatbelts on school buses are recommended for the safety  
19 of all special needs students.

20

21 Besides operator qualifications, a driver should be able to operate specially equipped or adapted  
22 vehicles. The driver should become familiar with the use of wheelchairs, braces, crutches, etc.

23

## 24 **MEDICAL NEEDS INFORMATION**

25 The driver should be aware of the unique needs of each student on their bus. They should be  
26 familiar with the medical and physical aspects of disabilities and know when a child is on  
27 medication and the effects of that medication. This will help the driver to determine when a child  
28 is portraying behaviors that are out of the ordinary. Transportation staff should keep a copy of  
29 the student’s health care plan on the bus, and it should be reviewed frequently. This plan should  
30 include instructions for the student transporters in the event of a medical emergency.

31



1 The driver has the responsibility of reporting to school authorities or to parents specific  
2 incidents, attitudes, behaviors, etc., which may be significant in the treatment of the child. They  
3 should know and understand what special steps to take in case of a traffic incident or breakdown.  
4 The comfort and emotional well-being of the children is the driver's responsibility. A driver may  
5 spend significant time learning how to care for each child under the many circumstances that  
6 might occur while the children are on the bus.

7

## 8 **SEIZURE MANAGEMENT**

9 **Be sure to follow district procedures for emergencies to prevent injury to the child.**

10

- 11 1. Observe the progression of symptoms during the seizure. Note the:
- 12 a. the time event began
  - 13 b. first thing the child does in an attack, in regard to movements
  - 14 c. types of movements of the part involved (stiffness starts, position of eyeballs and  
15 head)
  - 16 d. body parts involved
  - 17 e. size of the pupils
    - 18 i. incontinence of urine and feces
  - 19 f. duration of each phase of the attack
  - 20 g. unconsciousness, if present, and its duration
  - 21 h. any obvious paralysis or weakness of arms or legs after the attack
  - 22 i. inability to speak after the attack
  - 23 j. whether or not the child sleeps after the attack
- 24 2. Support the child during the convulsive seizure.
- 25 a. Ensure the child has adequate airway
  - 26 b. Speak calmly to the student, reminding them that they are safe and that you are  
27 with them
  - 28 c. Give the child privacy and protection from curious on-lookers
  - 29 d. Protect the head with padding to prevent head injury
    - 30 i. Towels, blankets, coats, clothes or book bags can be used
    - 31 ii. Loosen constrictive clothing

- 1                   iii. Provide protection with the possibility of suffocation
- 2                   e. When jaws are clenched in spasm DO NOT attempt to pry open to insert a mouth
- 3                   gag
- 4                   f. Place child on his/her side during convulsion (if possible) to facilitate drainage of
- 5                   mucus and saliva. Do not attempt to lift child during the seizure; to do so may
- 6                   cause injury. Instead of moving the child during a seizure, remove things that
- 7                   could cause injury.
- 8                   3. Once convulsive movements have stopped, allow the child to recover naturally. When
- 9                   appropriate (when the child awakens), reorient the child to his/her environment.

## 11 **TYPES OF SEIZURES AND THEIR CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS**

### 12 **AURA**

- 13                   a. Small localized seizures that sometimes precede grand mal seizures and act as a warning.
- 14                   b. The child cannot explain them but knows they exist.
- 15                   c. May include vague symptoms such as irritability, headache, gastrointestinal disturbances
- 16                   or mental dullness, visual disturbances or light sensitivity.
- 17                   d. The interval between the aura and grand mal seizure is usually short, but it may be an
- 18                   hour or more than a day.

### 19 **GRAND MAL**

- 20                   a. Onset
- 21                   • Onset is abrupt.
- 22                   • May occur at night.
- 23                   • An aura occurs in about one-third of epileptic children prior to a grand mal
- 24                   seizure.
- 25                   b. Tonic Spasm
- 26                   • The child's entire body becomes stiff.
- 27                   • The child usually loses consciousness.
- 28                   • The face may become pale and distorted.
- 29                   • The eyes are frequently fixed in one position.
- 30                   • The back may be arched with the head held backward or to one side.
- 31                   • The arms are usually flexed with the hands clenched.

- 1 • The child may bite his/her tongue or cheek. (This occurs because of a sudden
- 2 forceful contraction of jaw and abdominal muscles.)
- 3 • The child is often unable to swallow his/her saliva.
- 4 • Breathing is ineffective and cyanosis (turning blue) results if spasm includes the
- 5 muscles of respiration.
- 6 • The pulse may become weak and irregular.
- 7 c. Clonic Phase
- 8 • This phase is characterized by twitching movements that follow the tonic state.
- 9 • Phase usually starts in one place and becomes generalized, including the muscles
- 10 of the face.
- 11 d. Duration
- 12 • Length varies.
- 13 • Usually, convulsions cease after a few minutes and consciousness returns.
- 14 e. Post-Convulsive State of Child
- 15 • The child is usually sleepy or exhausted.
- 16 • May complain of headache.
- 17 • May appear to be in a dazed state.
- 18 • Often performs relatively automatic tasks without being able to recall the episode.

## 19 **PETIT MAL**

- 20 a. Petit mal onset rarely appears before three (3) years of age.
- 21 b. Clinical Signs
- 22 • Loss of contact with the environment for a few brief seconds. May appear to be
- 23 staring or daydreaming and will suddenly discontinue any activity and resume it when
- 24 the seizure has ended.
- 25 • Minor manifestations include rolling of the eyes, nodding of the head, sucking the
- 26 tongue and slight quivering of the trunk and limb muscles.
- 27 c. Duration is usually less than thirty (30) seconds.
- 28 d. Frequency varies from one to two per month to several hundred each day.
- 29 e. Post convulsive state of child:
- 30 • appears normal; and

- 1           • the child is not aware of having had a convulsion.

2

3 **FOCAL SEIZURES (PSYCHOMOTOR)**

4 a. Clinical Signs

- 5           • Child undertakes purposeful but inappropriate motor acts.
- 6           • Child may pick at clothing with hands.
- 7           • Child may make chewing movements with mouth or perform other complicated
- 8           actions.
- 9           • A young child may emit a shrill cry or attempt to run for help. There is usually a
- 10          gradual loss of postural tone.
- 11          • May have pallor around mouth.

12 b. Duration is brief, usually about one minute.

13 c. Post-Convulsive State of Child

- 14          • Child may be confused after a seizure, but has no “memory of what happened.”

15

16 **FOCAL MOTOR (JACKSONIAN SEIZURES)**

17 a. Clinical Signs

- 18          • Sudden jerking movements occur in a particular area of the body such as the face,
- 19          arms or tongue (less often the leg or foot).
- 20          • Seizure begins on one side of the body and spreads to adjacent areas on the same side
- 21          in a fixed progression.
- 22          • Prognosis: seizure may become more extensive as the child matures, leading to grand
- 23          mal seizures.

24 b. Focal Sensory (rare in children)

- 25          • Sensations may occur, such as numbness, tingling and coldness.

26

27 **OBSERVE FOR RECURRENT SEIZURES**

- 28          1. Place the child where he/she can be watched closely.
- 29          2. Check child frequently.
- 30          3. Watch for and report to school or parent(s) /guardian(s) if you see:
- 31              a. behavior changes

- 1           b. irritability
- 2           c. restlessness and/or
- 3           d. listlessness

4

## 5   **CARE DURING A SEIZURE**

6       1. Maintain patient airway and adequate ventilation.

7           a. Loosen tight clothing (belt, collar, etc.); turn child onto side to facilitate drainage  
8           or turn head to the side and point chin downward. This allows saliva and mucus to  
9           run out of the mouth and not be aspirated; the tongue will drop forward away  
10          from airway. During convulsions, the child is unable to swallow. This increases  
11          the possibility of aspiration because vomitus and increased secretions are  
12          frequently present.

13       2. Do not attempt to forcibly open convulsing child's mouth if the jaws are clenched.

14       3. Do not attempt to push an airway or tongue blade forcibly between front teeth. To do so  
15       may break or loosen teeth or injure lips.

16       4. Never put your fingers into the child's mouth; the child may accidentally bite you during  
17       the seizure.

18       5. Do not attempt to restrain the child's movements during convulsions.

19           a. Restraint may increase the movements and their severity and could cause fracture  
20           if extreme spasticity is present.

21           b. Lightly hold the child's hands to prevent him/her from banging them.

22

## 23   **DEFINITIONS AND DESCRIPTIONS**

### 24   **Physically Disabled or Orthopedically Impaired**

25   Severe orthopedic impairment which adversely affects educational performance to the extent that  
26   specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. These students  
27   have a range of physical or health problems. Some are able to work full-time in the general  
28   (comprehensive) education program and need only special transportation and an architecturally  
29   accessible building. They are taught to lead productive, independent lives by learning to  
30   compensate for their physical disabilities.

31

1 **Other Health Impaired**

2 Limited strength, vitality or alertness, due to a chronic or acute health problem, which adversely  
3 affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for  
4 the pupil to benefit from education. These students are medically fragile and/or chronically ill  
5 and may need the environment of a special classroom. They are taught to compensate for their  
6 physical disabilities to the extent possible in order to lead productive, independent lives.

7  
8 **Communication Disorder – Speech/Language Impaired**

9 Disorder in language, articulation, voice or fluency, which adversely affects educational  
10 performance that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from  
11 education. The student may have any or all of the following problems: does not pronounce words  
12 clearly, stutters, does not understand what people say to him/her, and/or is unable to put his/her  
13 thought into words.

14  
15 **Hearing Impairment**

16 Physiological hearing loss ranging from mild to profound, permanent or fluctuating, and of such  
17 a degree that the pupil is impaired in the processing of linguistic information via the auditory  
18 channel either with or without amplification, adversely affecting educational performance so that  
19 specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. These students  
20 have a range of hearing loss from mild to profound. All of them are encouraged to communicate  
21 through speech that may be somewhat difficult to understand. They are also expected to speech  
22 read (“read lips”) as much as possible so they will be able to communicate with non-handicapped  
23 persons. Some students supplement their speech with various types of manual (hand) signing. It  
24 is easier for them to speech read if the person is facing them and speaks at a normal (not slowed)  
25 rate. (A mustache/beard sometimes makes speech reading more difficult.) Many hearing-  
26 impaired students have some speech, but have difficulty discriminating between speech and  
27 background noises. Many hearing impaired students have hearing aids and should be encouraged  
28 to wear/use them at all times.

29  
30 **Mental Disability**

31 Deficit or delay in intellectual or adaptive behavior functioning, which adversely affects

1 educational performance so that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit  
2 from education.

3

#### 4 **Emotional-Behavioral Disability**

5 Behavioral excess or deficit, which significantly interferes with a pupil's interpersonal  
6 relationships or learning process to the extent that it adversely affects educational performance,  
7 so that specially designed instruction is required. The major problems these students have are  
8 usually those of controlling their own behavior and interacting appropriately with adults and  
9 peers. They may over-react to apparent trivial situations. They may also be defiant of authority –  
10 especially in front of their peers and may “test” an adult to find out if misbehavior will be  
11 tolerated. They need to be given – before an incident occurs – very specific directions as to what  
12 is expected of them. It is helpful to establish a few rules. It is better to state rules in terms of what  
13 they should do (e.g., “Keep your hands inside the bus.”) rather than what they should not do  
14 (e.g., “Do not put your hands outside the bus.” Do not make idle threats; if consequences have  
15 been previously established for a specific misbehavior, they must be capable of being carried out.  
16 Some students are on a behavior management program and are rewarded when the bus driver  
17 reports to the teacher that their bus behavior has been acceptable.

18

#### 19 **Multiple Disability**

20 A combination of two or more disabilities resulting in significant learning, developmental or  
21 behavioral and emotional problems. Adversely affect educational performance to the extent that  
22 specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education.

23 Students in this category have a combination of two or more handicapping conditions – physical  
24 and/or mental. The students within this category do not all have similar needs. Their programs  
25 are specially designed to match their needs and abilities.

26

#### 27 **Specific Learning Disability**

28 Disorder in one or more of the psychological processes. Primarily involved in understanding or  
29 using spoken or written language which selectively and significantly interferes with the  
30 acquisition, integration or application of listening, speaking, reading, writing, reasoning or  
31 mathematical abilities. This disorder is lifelong. Intrinsic to the individual, it adversely affects

1 educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil  
2 to benefit from education. This term does not include a learning issues which is a direct result of  
3 a hearing impairment; visual, physical, mental or emotional-behavioral disabilities or  
4 environmental, cultural or economic differences. These students have difficulties in one or more  
5 specific areas, such as motor skills or reading, writing, or mathematics. Their problems are  
6 mostly academic, but sometimes their frustration with avoidance of academic tasks can result in  
7 mild behavior problems. These students tend to learn each thing in isolation, rather than applying  
8 their knowledge to many situations, and the students tend to act on impulse without considering  
9 the consequences.

10

### 11 **Visually Impaired**

12 Visual impairment which, even with correction, adversely affects educational performance to the  
13 extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education.

14 Very few of these students are totally blind. Most have some usable vision and can see shapes,  
15 shadows and other clues that help them to move through their surroundings. They are taught to  
16 use their senses of touch and hearing to provide the additional information they do not receive  
17 with their eyes. While some read Braille materials, most can use large print textbooks or other  
18 enlarging devices.

19

### 20 **Traumatic Brain Injury**

21 Acquired impairment to the neurological system resulting from an injury to the brain, which  
22 adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is  
23 required for the pupil to benefit from education. Traumatic Brain Injury does not include a brain  
24 injury that is congenital or degenerative, or a brain injury induced by birth trauma. These  
25 students have experienced some injury to the brain and exhibit a wide range of mental and  
26 physical abilities. These students will have shorter attention span, short-term memory loss or  
27 lack of concentration. Mild behavior problems may result. Due to the nature of the injury,  
28 students have individual needs.

29

### 30 **Autism**

31 Developmental disability significantly affecting verbal and non-verbal communication and social



1 interaction, generally evident before age three. Autism can adversely affect education  
2 performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit  
3 from education.

4 Characteristics include:

- 5 • irregularity and impairment in communication
- 6 • engagement in repetitive activity and stereotyped movement
- 7 • resistance to environmental change or change in daily routine
- 8 • unusual responses to sensory experiences.

9 This does not include children with characteristics of an emotional-behavioral disability. The  
10 student displaying “autistic” or “autistic-like” behaviors may have difficulty developing and  
11 using verbal or nonverbal communication systems making it difficult to use traditional methods  
12 of interaction. The student may engage in repetitive motions or behavioral patterns and perhaps  
13 will be sensitive to being touched. Specific behavior modification techniques are needed to elicit  
14 the most correct behavior, making it important for the transportation staff to conference with the  
15 student’s teacher regarding appropriate interventions.

16

### 17 **BEHAVIOR PATTERNS**

18 Behavior patterns of each child are individual situations and need be understood. Each driver  
19 must treat each child separately. A student may behave differently from day to day because of  
20 medication

21 For example, don’t give a general direction to the entire bus load of children. You can’t  
22 assume everyone would understand this direction.

23

24 Behavior patterns of a special needs child for any given day or hour of the day can be caused or  
25 changed by the actions of others around them to include the:

- 26 • school bus driver
- 27 • parents, or members of the family
- 28 • teacher or aide
- 29 • other bus students.

30

31 Sudden changes or disruptions can trigger behaviors that a special needs child may already have.

1 The person managing the student should try to understand, if possible, what may have caused the  
2 problem and try to correct it. When a child is corrected, regardless of the age and size, take into  
3 consideration their attention span. With some children, this can be rather short. Short, specific  
4 instructions should be given. Be consistent when you correct a child.

## 6 **TRANSPORT**

7 Maintain a set of clear rules. Make a short list of rules concerning behavior while riding the bus  
8 and following them to the letter. The child wants to know where they stand. Remember, once  
9 children begin to misbehave, they may not be able to help themselves – you must help them. Any  
10 deviation from these rules will only confuse the child. Be firm, but fair, smile often child, but be  
11 direct when you address them.

12  
13 You could be the key to the pupils' whole day! You are the first school authority to see them in  
14 the morning and the last to see them at night. Say "Good morning!" and let them know that you  
15 are glad to see them and want them to ride on your bus.

16  
17 If a child is on a medication, you must know the effects of the medication and what to do if it  
18 should wear off. Medications should never be left on the bus but should be handed off to the  
19 receiving adult of the child. A signature release form should be signed whenever medication is  
20 received or handed off by the driver.

21  
22 You must be resourceful in discipline areas.

## 24 **LOADING AND UNLOADING**

25 Most transportation systems load and unload special education children in front of each child's  
26 home because the children cannot be left unattended. These children sometimes need assistance  
27 to board the bus. Eye-to-eye contact with some children is a must, where others may require no  
28 eye-to-eye contact.

29  
30 Care is needed at all times to keep these children on the bus when other children are being loaded  
31 or unloaded. A child who must use special equipment such as a wheelchair, braces, crutches,

1 etc., may have difficulty during the loading and unloading process. As the driver, you must know  
2 how to correct any issue they may have.

3

4 Remember, care and protection are two things which the parents and children expect from a  
5 driver. Usually, you will follow the same loading and unloading procedures for controlling the  
6 bus as you would when transporting any other student.

7

8

### 9 **PROCEDURE FOR OPERATING LIFT EQUIPMENT**

- 10 1. The bus must be in neutral, emergency brake on.
- 11 2. Open the lift doors and hook latches in outside wall of bus.
- 12 3. Remove the hand-held controls and push long lever down to unfold platform. The  
13 platform will be flush with floor of bus.
- 14 4. Press the “lower platform” button.
- 15 5. Lower the platform to ground level, make sure the hinge releases the barrier.
- 16 6. Roll the wheelchair backwards and lock hand brakes.
- 17 7. Place your hand on wheelchair to give the student secure feeling.
- 18 8. Press the “raise platform” button, making sure barrier locks in place. The platform will  
19 raise to bus floor level.
- 20 9. Pull the wheelchair into bus and secure.
- 21 10. Fold the platform back into bus and shut doors.
- 22 11. No one may ride on the lift with a student.

23

### 24 **AIDE ASSISTED**

- 25 1. Be sure each person knows his/her role. In the case of misunderstanding, don't argue.  
26 Carry on any discussion out of the student's presence.
- 27 2. Direct the aide to carry or guide the student onto the bus. When appropriate, an adult is  
28 allowed on the bus with written permission from the superintendent.
- 29 3. When the use of assistive devices are required, check to see that they are securely  
30 fastened before putting bus into motion.
- 31 4. When specially equipped buses are used to accommodate wheelchairs, etc., with the use

1 of a ramp or lift, supervise the aide in guiding chair onto bus and securing it in place  
2 inside the bus.

3 5. When loading or unloading, the driver must be on the bus.

4 6. Check to see that the ramp and side door have been securely fastened into a locked  
5 position after the student has entered the bus. Start the bus and follow procedure for  
6 entering the flow of traffic.

7

### 8 **NOT AIDE ASSISTED**

9 1. Set the parking brake, secure the bus in “park,” turn off the motor and take the key out of  
10 the ignition.

11 2. When appropriate, an adult is allowed on the bus with written permission from the  
12 superintendent.

13 3. Leave the bus and carry or guide the handicapped student onto the bus. The student  
14 should be brought to the bus by a parent or other responsible person.

15 4. Check to see that the ramp and side door have been securely fastened into a locked  
16 position after the student has entered the bus. Start the bus and follow proper procedure  
17 for entering the flow of traffic.

18

### 19 **UNLOADING**

#### 20 **SCHOOL GROUNDS**

21 1. When appropriate, an adult is allowed on the bus with written permission from the  
22 superintendent.

23 2. Carry or guide each student off the bus into the charge of a teacher or other school  
24 attendant.

25 3. Check to see that all belongings of each student are taken off the bus.

26

#### 27 **HOME**

28 1. When appropriate, an adult is allowed on the bus with written permission from the  
29 superintendent.

30 2. Carry, or guide, each student off the bus into the charge of a parent or other responsible  
31 person.

- 1 3. Check to see that all belongings of each student are taken off the bus.
- 2 4. Report tactfully to the parent and school officials any observation, which may be
- 3 inappropriate, whether medical or behavioral.
- 4 5. If an authorized person is not at home to receive the student, follow local procedures.

5

## 6 **DUTIES ON THE ROAD**

- 7 1. Assign the bus aid to ensure that all students remain safely seated.
  - 8 a. Occasionally a particular student's needs require more than you can provide as
  - 9 one who must be responsible for the safety of all students.
  - 10 b. Do not allow students to continually demand your attention when you are driving.
- 11 2. If any students show symptoms of illness that require immediate attention, pull the bus as
- 12 far off the road as possible and stop; activate four-way hazards lights.
- 13 3. If a radio or phone is available, notify the proper authorities; otherwise, notify the aide or
- 14 passing motorist to call authorities from an available phone.
- 15 4. Watch for unusual behavior that may occur; for example, petit mal or grand mal seizures,
- 16 erratic behavior or inactivity, etc.

17

## 18 **STUDENT INFORMATION**

19 A driver must have pertinent information about each of the students and be an observer of  
20 behavior on the bus. A driver is often the source of information, which is vitally important to the  
21 supervisor, the student's teacher, and parents. Some students will have medical instructions  
22 specifying special care or medication limitations. Information about each student shall be kept  
23 secure. Make a confidential card file form to be kept on the bus when children are on board and  
24 in the supervisor's office. A 3" X 5" card is suggested. See below:

25

1

	Name:
	Address:
	Telephone#:
	Emergency Back Up #:
	Birthdate:
Parents:	
Medication:	
Hospital:	
Doctor:	
Doctor Phone #:	
Insurance:	
Special Instructions:	
Map where child lives may be put on back.	

2

DRAFT

1 **CHAPTER 10**  
2 **FIRST AID**

3 **OBJECTIVES**

4 A driver will:

- 5 • Understand the basic principles of first aid and their immediate responsibilities.
- 6 • Know the steps to follow for choking.
- 7 • Procedures to control bleeding.
- 8 • Recognize and administer treatment for shock, fainting, heat exhaustion, nosebleeds,  
9 fractures, and seizures.
- 10 • understand blood borne pathogens and exposure control

11  
12  
13 **Note to Instructor: It is advisable to have a first aid professional such as a school nurse**  
14 **teach certain areas of this chapter to ensure the most current and proper procedures are**  
15 **taught.**

16 **Areas for the professional to provide training in are: Abdominal thrust, arterial bleeding,**  
17 **CPR, and clearing the airway of an unconscious person**

1 **INTRODUCTION**

2 First aid is the immediate and temporary care given to a victim of an incident or sudden illness  
3 until further medical services can be obtained. The primary objective of first aid is to save lives.  
4 A school bus driver must know how to administer basic first aid. In an emergency, an error could  
5 have disastrous consequences to the patient. It is as important to know what to do as what not to  
6 do. A person will respond more quickly to treatment if he/she recognizes that a competent person  
7 is administering the first aid.

8  
9 It is necessary for you to know and understand what you are and are not trained to do. Know  
10 your limits and when to call for help.

11  
12 **EVALUATING THE SITUATION – SETTING PRIORITIES**

13 To effectively deal with emergencies, the situation must be evaluated, and priorities set. Three  
14 (3) evaluations, which must be made to establish priorities for treatment are:

- 15 • the condition of the scene;
- 16 • the type of the injury; and
- 17 • the need for treatment.

18  
19 The primary first aid procedures are:

- 20 • to restore breathing;
- 21 • to control bleeding; and
- 22 • prevent shock

23 The most urgent action following an incident is to remove everyone from danger. Several types  
24 of situations are of high priority; such as fires, electrocution and drowning. Do not give aid until  
25 everyone is safe. Do not attempt to make a rescue until you are sure you will not become a  
26 victim. Use gloves anytime body fluids are being touched.

27  
28 **Always follow school district protocol when providing first aid. School authorities should**  
29 **always be notified of any incident or injury that occurs while students are being**  
30 **transported.**

31



1 **EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES (EMS) SYSTEM**

2 An EMS system is community-wide, coordinated means of reporting an incident or sudden  
3 illness. The EMS system is activated by calling 911. When you call for help, give the following  
4 information:

- 5 • Where the emergency is, with cross streets, if possible.
- 6 • Phone number you are calling from.
- 7 • What happened – bus incident, fall, etc.?
- 8 • How many people need help?
- 9 • What is being done for the victim?

10

11 **CHOKING**

12 Choking is the number one reason food and drink are not allowed to be consumed on the school  
13 bus. A student may easily choke on something while on stable ground, but to add a moving  
14 vehicle to the equation makes things more difficult. A driver must pull the bus over to a safe  
15 location before tending to the child, losing precious time in the rescue process.

16

17 If you suspect a student might be choking, you will want to look for signs such as their hand  
18 around their throat, lips and fingertips turning blue, difficulty in breathing, coughing, or loss of  
19 consciousness. A student may panic, and you will need to help keep them calm by staying calm  
20 yourself.

21

22 If the student is coughing, let them continue to cough to try and dislodge whatever is blocking  
23 their airway. If they can't talk or cough forcefully, the American Red Cross recommends a "five-  
24 and-five" approach to delivering first aid:

25

- 26 • **Give 5 abdominal thrusts.** Perform five abdominal thrusts, also called the Heimlich  
27 maneuver.
- 28 • **Alternate between 5 blows and 5 thrusts** until the blockage is dislodged.

29

30 Note: Back blows are not recommended by the American Red Cross for anyone except very  
31 small infants. Contact your regional red cross for current information on this matter.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**BLEEDING**

Bleeding requires immediate attention. If a person is bleeding intensely, he/she can die in less than two (2) minutes. The loss of a pint of blood by a child and a quart by an adult may have disastrous results. Even the loss of a small amount of blood produces weakness and possibly shock. Evaluate the type of bleeding and the blood loss.

**EVALUATION OF BLEEDING**

There are three types of bleeding (hemorrhage). Blood can come from the capillaries, veins, or arteries.

1. Capillary bleeding comes from injuries to capillaries or small veins. It is indicated by steady oozing of dark-colored blood.
2. Venous bleeding comes from a vein and is indicated by a flow of dark colored blood at a steady rate.
3. Arterial bleeding comes from an artery and is indicated by bright red blood flowing quickly in spurts or jets. It will spurt out with the heartbeat. Arterial bleeding may be mixed with venous bleeding.

Bleeding can be external or internal. External bleeding is the bleeding you can see. Internal bleeding often has no outward indication. Tender, swollen, bruised or hard areas of the body, such as the abdomen may indicate there is a possibility of internal bleeding. If the person collapses or has anxiety, marked paleness of the skin, rapid breathing, rapid and weak pulse, restlessness and thirst, the person could be in shock from internal bleeding.

**CONTROL OF BLEEDING**

The primary step to control bleeding is to exert direct pressure over the wound. As a universal precaution, use protective gloves in situations involving blood or body fluids.

A dressing is the immediate protective cover placed over a wound. A bandage is a strip of woven material used to hold a dressing or compress in place. It may also be used to hold a splint in place.

1 Make sure there are no foreign objects in the wound prior to applying direct pressure. Using the  
2 gauze in the first aid kit, or the cleanest material available, hold it against the bleeding point and  
3 apply firm pressure. Raise and support the injured area, if it is not broken, above the heart if  
4 possible. Apply a bandage to hold the gauze/material in place. If the material/bandage is used  
5 and blood soaks through it, do not remove it. Apply additional bandages and secure them in  
6 place. Be sure the bandage is not too tight.

7

## 8 **ARTERIAL PRESSURE POINTS**

9 **Note to instructor: You may print out a document from online sources to show the location**  
10 **of the arteries.**

11 If direct pressure on the wound does not control bleeding and the student is in extreme danger of  
12 losing their life due to a loss of blood. At this point, direct pressure on the arterial pressure point  
13 closest to the wound may be necessary. The arterial pressure point must be located between the  
14 heart and the wound, putting the pressure closest to the heart. By applying pressure to an artery,  
15 you are stopping the bleeding by putting the artery against the bone. Press down firmly on the  
16 artery between the bleeding site and the heart.

17

18 **You will know you have the artery because you will be able to feel the pulse. Do not apply**  
19 **pressure for more than 10 minutes.**

20 Common pressure points include:

- 21 1. Temporal- located above the ears, in line with the corner of the eyes. This is used for  
22 bleeding on the head, above the ears.
- 23 2. Facial – located in the small crevice one inch (1”) from the angle of the jaw. When you  
24 use a pressure point, keep using direct pressure. This is used for bleeding on the lower  
25 part of the face.
- 26 3. Carotid – located between the Adam’s apple and neck muscles. This is used for bleeding  
27 in from the neck.
- 28 4. Subclavian – located in the hollow area near the collarbone. This is used for bleeding that  
29 is high on the arm.
- 30 5. Brachial - located on the arm between the shoulder and the elbow, approximately three  
31 inches (3”) below the armpit. This is used for bleeding low on the arm.

- 1        6. Lunar- located on the wrist, where you feel the pulse.
- 2        7. Femoral - located in the groin area, along the bikini line. A lot of pressure is required to
- 3                control this bleeding. It may require the use of both your hands. This is used for bleeding
- 4                in the thigh area.
- 5        8. Popliteal – located behind the knee. This is used for bleeding from the lower leg below
- 6                the knee.

7

8        **TOURNIQUET**

9        A tourniquet is a last resort option. It is rarely required and should be used only for severe, life-

10        threatening hemorrhaging that cannot be controlled with direct or arterial pressure. It is

11        dangerous to apply, dangerous to leave on and dangerous to remove. It will cause tissue injury

12        and stoppage of the entire supply of blood to the part below it. This can cause gangrene and

13        could result in the loss of a limb.

14

15        **SCHOOL BUS FIRST AID KIT**

16        Gauze Compress – Use as a dressing or padding for a splint.

17        Bandage Compress – Compress and bandage attached.

18        Triangular Bandage – May be used as a sling for fracture or other injury of the arm or hand. May

19        be folded and used as a circular, spiral or figure-eight bandage.

20        Adhesive Bandage – Band-Aid

21        Gauze Bandage – To be used around body or limb to hold compress in place.

22        Scissors and Tweezers

23

24        **SHOCK**

25        Shock is a condition in which the circulatory system fails to deliver blood to all parts of the

26        body. Shock may be fatal even though the injury which causes it may not be enough to cause

27        death. Shock can be made worse by extreme pain and fright. Call your local emergency number

28        immediately. Shock can't be managed effectively by first aid alone. A victim of shock requires

29        advanced medical care as soon as possible.

30

31        THREE (3) very common causes of severe shock are:

- 1 • inadequate breathing;
- 2 • excessive bleeding; and
- 3 • un-splinted fractures.

4 Treating these problems lessens the shock.

5

## 6 **SYMPTOMS OF SHOCK**

- 7 • Skin is pale, cold and clammy with small drops of sweat particularly around the lips and
- 8 forehead.
- 9 • Restlessness or irritability may occur.
- 10 • Nausea and dizziness may be present.
- 11 • Pulse may be fast and weak, or absent.
- 12 • Breathing may be shallow and irregular.
- 13 • Eyes may be dull with enlarged or dilated (larger) pupils.
- 14 • Altered consciousness may occur.
- 15 • Victim may be unaware of the seriousness of the injury, then collapse.

16

## 17 **OBJECTIVES and TREATMENT**

- 18 • Improve circulation of blood.
- 19 • Ensure an adequate supply of oxygen.
- 20 • Maintain normal body temperatures.

21

## 22 **BODY POSITION**

23 Standard position – lying on back, feet elevated six to twelve inches (6” –12”) – unless you  
24 suspect head, neck, or back injuries or possible broken bones involving the hips or legs). If you  
25 are unsure of the victim’s condition, leave him/her lying flat. A victim who is bleeding from the  
26 mouth or vomiting should lie on one side so that fluid will drain from the mouth.

27

## 28 **REGULATING BODY TEMPERATURE**

29 Keep the victim warm enough to avoid or overcome chilling. If the victim is exposed to cold or  
30 dampness, blankets or additional clothing should be placed over and under him/her to prevent  
31 chilling.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

**ADMINISTERING FLUIDS**

**Do not give the victim anything to eat or drink, even though he or she is likely to be thirsty.**

**FAINTING**

Fainting is partial or complete loss of consciousness due to a reduced supply of blood to the brain for a short time. A person may collapse suddenly without warning. Recovery of consciousness almost always occurs when the victim falls or is placed in a reclining position.

**SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

- extreme paleness;
- sweating
- coldness of the skin;
- dizziness;
- numbness and tingling of the hands and feet;
- nausea; and/or
- possible disturbance of vision.

**Note: To protect against a fainting spell, have patient sit with head between the knees.**

**FIRST AID FOR FAINTING**

Leave the victim lying down.  
Loosen any tight clothing and keep crowds away.  
If the victim vomits, roll him/her onto their side and, if necessary, with gloves wipe out his/her mouth with your fingers.  
Maintain an open airway.  
Do not pour water over the victim's face because of the danger of aspiration; instead, bathe the face gently with cool water.  
Do not give any liquids unless the victim has revived.  
Examine the victim to determine if they have suffered an injury from the fall.

1 **HEAT EXHAUSTION**

2 Heat exhaustion is the most common heat related illness. During the summer and early fall,  
3 many students may fall into this category due to dehydration and other reasons. Heat exhaustion  
4 can lead to heat stroke. Most school buses do not have air conditioning and having the windows  
5 and emergency vents open are important.

6

7 Signs and symptoms include:

- 8 • Cool, moist skin with goose bumps when in the heat
- 9 • High body temperature
- 10 • Heavy sweating
- 11 • Faintness or dizziness
- 12 • Lethargy or fatigue
- 13 • Weak, rapid pulse and shallow breathing
- 14 • Low blood pressure when standing up
- 15 • Muscle cramps
- 16 • Vomiting
- 17 • Headache

18

19 **FIRST AID**

20 Lower the body temperature by:

- 21 • Move the victim to a cool place, out of the heat into an air-conditioned place.
- 22 • Fan the victim.
- 23 • Remove heavy/tight clothing.
- 24 • Cool the person by spraying or sponging with cool water and fanning.
- 25 • Have the person drink cool water or other beverage without caffeine.
- 26 • Lay them down and elevate their legs and feet.

27

28 **NOSE BLEEDING**

- 29 • Place the victim in a sitting position. Have the victim lean forward.
- 30 • Loosen the collar and anything tight around the neck.

- 1 • Give the victim a compress to hold over their nose.
- 2 • Apply pressure directly at the site of the bleeding by pressing the bleeding nostril toward
- 3 the midline.
- 4 • Do not allow the victim to blow nose.

5

6 If bleeding continues, the victim should insert a small, clean pad of gauze (not absorbent cotton)

7 into one or both nostrils and apply pressure with thumb and index finger.

8

## 9 **FRACTURES AND SPLINTING**

10 A closed fracture is an injury beneath the skin and may be difficult to detect. Do not move or

11 have the victim move any body parts. The signs of a closed fracture are pain, swelling, deformity

12 and discoloration.

13

14 An open fracture is usually much more serious than closed fractures because of the amount of

15 tissue damage, bleeding and danger of infection. Do not try to push a bone end back inside the

16 skin.

17

## 18 **SPLINTING**

- 19 • Only if the victim must be moved or transported by someone other than emergency
- 20 medical personal.
- 21 • Only if you can do it without causing more pain and discomfort to the victim.
- 22 • Splint in the position you find it.
- 23 • Splint the injured area and the joints above and below the injury.
- 24 • Check for proper circulation before and after splinting.
- 25 • It may be necessary to stop any associated bleeding and treat for shock.

26

## 27 **EPILEPSY AND OTHER SOURCES OF CONVULSIONS**

28 The two (2) major signs of a serious epileptic attack are convulsions and loss of consciousness.

29 A mild attack may last only a second and may not be noticed by others. First aid for epilepsy is

30 the same as for other convulsions with the primary effort being made to prevent the victim from

31 hurting himself/herself.



- 1 • Push away nearby objects.
- 2 • Do not force a blunt object between the victim's teeth.
- 3 • When jerking is over, loosen the clothing around the neck.
- 4 • Keep the victim lying down.
- 5 • Keep his/her airway open.
- 6 • Do not try to restrain the victim. Jerking motions and/or foaming at the mouth may often
- 7 occur.
- 8 • If breathing stops, give artificial respiration.
- 9 • Allow the victim to sleep or rest following the seizure. Do not question, disturb or
- 10 embarrass the victim.
- 11 • Assure all bystanders that the victim will not harm anyone.

12

### 13 **BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS**

14 Blood borne pathogens are micro-organisms in the bloodstream that can cause disease. The two  
15 (2) diseases that are of major concern in the work environment are Hepatitis B and HIV (AIDS).  
16 Blood borne pathogens are found in blood and blood products such as: semen, vaginal secretions,  
17 breast milk and other body fluids. Only blood, semen, vaginal secretions and breast milk have  
18 been proven to transmit the HIV virus. HIV is a more lethal virus, yet Hepatitis B is more  
19 contagious. HIV and Hepatitis B can only be transmitted if the exposed blood is infectious and  
20 that blood can enter directly into the body.

21

22 Blood or other infectious material could enter the body through:

- 23 • unprotected openings in the skin such as cuts, scrapes and dermatitis;
- 24 • unprotected mucus membrane openings such as the eyes, nose and mouth; and/or
- 25 • penetration into the skin by a sharp object such as broken glass, a needle or knife blade.

26

27 Drivers should always use the "Body Fluid Clean-Up Kit" when dealing with blood or body  
28 fluids such as vomit and report any exposure to their supervisor. Kits usually include items such  
29 as disposable gloves, spatulas, a contaminated materials bag and germicidal antiseptic wiping  
30 cloths. Employees should consult their school district's "Exposure Control Plan Reference  
31 Procedures and Universal Precautions" relating to Blood borne pathogens. All drivers should

1 receive training for occupational exposure.

2

3 **SUMMARY**

4 There are many other medical issues that may arise on a school bus or at the scene of an  
5 emergency. Only a few critical issues have been dealt with in this unit. All drivers should be  
6 trained by a certified professional in proper first aide procedures.

7

8 Drivers should remember that above all know the limits of their capabilities and make every  
9 effort to avoid further injury to the victim in an attempt to provide the best possible emergency  
10 care. Follow all district procedures and call EMS when necessary.

11

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9

## CHAPTER 11 COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CDL)

### OBJECTIVE

- The driver will be knowledgeable of federally mandated CDL Law.

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18

**Note to Instructor: At the end of this chapter, the driver should be taken back on the road for Vehicle Operation Part II portion of the training.**

### INTRODUCTION

19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32

This unit will discuss the various aspects of the federally mandated CDL law, which affect anyone with a CDL. If you live in Kentucky and want to drive a commercial motor vehicle on public roads, you must have a Kentucky commercial driver's license unless you are expressly exempt. Much of this information may not pertain to driving a government owned school bus, but as a CDL holder, you must be aware of the information. In the future, if you drive a school bus that is not government owned, or any other commercial motor vehicle, this information will pertain to you.

### LICENSE CLASS

Commercial motor vehicle means any self-propelled or towed motor vehicle used on a highway in interstate commerce to transport passengers or property when the vehicle:

- Has a gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating, or gross vehicle weight or gross combination weight, of 4,536 kg (10,001 pounds) or more, whichever is greater: or
- Is designed or used to transport more than 8 passengers (including the driver) for compensation.
- Is designed or used to transport more than 15 passengers, including the driver, and is not used to transport passengers for compensation; or
- Is used in transporting material found by the Secretary of Transportation to be hazardous under 49 U.S.C. 5103 and transported in a quantity requiring placarding under regulations prescribed by the Secretary under 49 CFR, subtitle B, chapter I, subchapter C.

### CLASS A

- 1 • Any combination of vehicles with a gross combination weight rating (GCWR) of 26,001  
2 pounds or more provided the GVWR of the vehicle(s) being towed is in excess of 10,000  
3 pounds.
- 4 • GCWR – the value specified by the manufacturer as the loaded weight of a combination  
5 (articulated) vehicle.
- 6 • GVWR – the value specified by the manufacturer as the loaded weight of a single  
7 vehicle.

8

9 **CLASS B**

- 10 • Any single vehicle with a GVWR of 26,001 pounds or more.
- 11 • Any vehicle with a GVWR of 26,001 pounds or more, pulling a vehicle with a GVWR of  
12 10,000 pounds or less.
- 13 • A single vehicle designed to transport more than 16 passengers (including the driver) if  
14 the GVWR is 26,001 pounds or more.

15 **CLASS C**

- 16 • Any vehicle with a GVWR of less than 26,001 pounds transporting hazardous materials  
17 for which placarding is required.
- 18 • Any vehicle transporting more than 16 passengers, including the driver, with a GVWR of  
19 less than 26,001 pounds

20 **CLASS D**

- 21 • Automobiles, pick-up trucks and all other motor vehicles not specified in Class A, B or  
22 C.

23

24 **CDL PERMIT**

25 Per 49 CFR 383.71 of the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations all CDL holders/applicants  
26 are required to have a valid Medical Examiner’s Certificate or federal/state medical waiver, Self-  
27 Certification, and Commercial Driver License application on file with the Department of Vehicle  
28 Regulation, Division of Driver Licensing, prior to CDL permit/license issuance.

29

30 Once the information has been received, the Commercial Driver License Section will review the  
31 medical certificate for authenticity and may contact your certified medical examiner for

1 verification and/or additional information. Once your medical certificate, self-certification, and  
2 commercial driver application are verified, your driving record will be updated. You will then be  
3 eligible to apply for a CDL permit/ license at the Circuit Court Clerk's office in your county of  
4 residency.

5  
6 All applicants will be required to successfully pass a knowledge test, either in written or oral  
7 form, and a vision test. A CDL instruction permit will then be issued which is valid for six (6)  
8 months. The permit must be held for 14 days prior to a skills test being administered.

9 A permit may only be renewed once in the two (2) year period. If you do not successfully pass  
10 the road skills test by the expiration of your CDL instruction permit renewal, you will need to  
11 reapply.

12

### 13 **GENERAL INFORMATION**

#### 14 **AGE AND FITNESS REQUIREMENTS**

15 You must be at least eighteen (18) years of age and have two (2) years of experience as a  
16 licensed driver to qualify for a commercial driver's license or a commercial driver's instruction  
17 permit. Federal Motor Carrier Rules (49CFR, Part 391.41) require that drivers subject to those  
18 rules meet specific physical qualification standards. Anyone under the age of 21 will receive a  
19 "K" restriction on their license to notate it is for intrastate (in state) use only. School bus drivers  
20 within the state of Kentucky must be 21-years of age.

21

#### 22 **NEW RESIDENT AND TRANSFER OF CDL**

23 After establishing residence in Kentucky, anyone who wishes to drive commercial motor  
24 vehicles must apply for a Kentucky commercial driver's license within thirty (30) days. If they  
25 have a valid out-of-state commercial driver's license, they must pass the vision test if he/she  
26 desires a Kentucky commercial driver's license. The Kentucky Department of Transportation,  
27 Division of Motor Vehicles, will obtain driving record information through the Commercial  
28 Driver's License Information System (CDLIS), the National Driver Register (NDR) and each  
29 state which he/she has been licensed. They will also be required to surrender their out-of-state  
30 license before a Kentucky commercial driver's license can be issued. New residents who do not  
31 hold a valid commercial driver's license from another state must follow the same procedures as

1 any first-time applicant for a commercial driver's license.

2

### 3 **RESTRICTED LICENSES**

4 The Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, is authorized to  
5 impose license restrictions to assure the safe operation of motor vehicles. The Department may  
6 issue a restricted license or may indicate restrictions on the regular license form. Operating a  
7 motor vehicle in violation of the restriction is a serious offense and could result in the suspension  
8 or revocation of your driving privilege.

9

### 10 **RESTRICTIONS**

- 11 • K Intrastate Driving Only
- 12 • L Vehicles not equipped w/air Brakes
- 13 • M Except Class A Bus
- 14 • N Except Class A and B Bus
- 15 • Vehicles other than Tractor Trailer
- 16 • E Auto Transmission CMV only
- 17 • Z Hydraulic over Air brake (CDL License Only)
- 18 • V Medical Variance
- 19 • W Farm Restricted Service
- 20 • X No Cargo in Tank Vehicle (CDL Permit Only)
- 21 • P No Passengers in Bus (CDL Permit Only)
- 22 • 8 Other (special restrictions)

23

### 24 **EXPIRATION OF LICENSE**

25 Commercial driver's licenses expire four (4) years from the date of issuance or eight (8) years  
26 depending upon the type of license renewal issued. A commercial driver's license held by  
27 someone in the armed forces which expires while the person is on active duty remains valid for  
28 thirty (30) days from the date the person re-establishes residence in Kentucky.

29

30 Any person applying to renew a commercial driver's license which has been expired for two (2)  
31 years or more must follow the procedures for initial issuance of a commercial driver's license,

1 including testing provisions.

2

3 **IMPLIED CONSENT**

4 Anyone who accepts the privilege of driving in Kentucky is deemed to have given consent, if  
5 requested, to taking the designated test to determine body alcohol content. If the driver refuses to  
6 take a test of their blood, breath, or urine, their privilege of operating a motor vehicle will be  
7 suspended for a period of one (1) year to life.

8

9 A test or tests may be ordered at the direction of a law enforcement officer who, after stopping or  
10 detaining the commercial motor vehicle driver, has reasonable cause to believe that driver was  
11 driving a commercial motor vehicle while having alcohol or drugs in his system.

12

13 As a CDL holder, you are held to a higher standard. Whether you receive a violation in your car  
14 or in the CMV, your CDL is at risk. In Kentucky, the below list of violations that could result in  
15 the loss of commercial driving privileges for time periods ranging from 24 hours to life:

- 16 • 24 hours - Driving a commercial motor vehicle with any measurable amount of alcohol or  
17 controlled substance in the blood, breath, or urine.
- 18 • 60 days - Two serious moving violations in three years. A serious violation is defined as  
19 speeding 15 mph or more, improper/erratic lane change, following too closely, reckless  
20 driving, any violation arising in connection with a fatal accident, driving a commercial  
21 motor vehicle without having a commercial learner's permit or commercial license,  
22 driving a commercial motor vehicle without having a commercial learner's permit or  
23 commercial license in possession, driving a commercial motor vehicle without the proper  
24 class commercial learner's permit or commercial license or required endorsements,  
25 texting while driving a commercial motor vehicle, or using a hand held mobile telephone  
26 while driving a commercial motor vehicle.
- 27 • Any person who knowingly falsifies information or certification required to obtain a  
28 commercial driver's license, permit, or duplicate commercial driver's license, will be  
29 subject to an administrative hearing and disqualified for period of at least 60 consecutive  
30 days.
- 31 • 120 days - Three serious moving violations in three years.

- 1 • 180 days - Convicted of operating a Commercial Motor Vehicle while placed out of  
2 service.
- 3 • 1 year - First conviction of any of the following:
  - 4 ○ Driving a commercial vehicle with a blood alcohol concentration of .04% or more  
5 or under the influence of a controlled substance.
  - 6 ○ Leaving the scene of a traffic accident
  - 7 ○ Using the commercial vehicle in the commission of a felony.
- 8 • 3 years - Violating any law above while transporting hazardous materials.
- 9 • For Life - First conviction of using the vehicle in the commission of a felony involving  
10 manufacturing, distributing, or dispensing a controlled substance.
- 11 • For Life - A second conviction of any of the following:
  - 12 ○ Driving a commercial motor vehicle under the influence of alcohol or other drugs.
  - 13 ○ Leaving the scene of a traffic accident while driving a commercial motor vehicle.
  - 14 ○ Using a commercial motor vehicle in the commission of a felony.
  - 15 ○ Refusing to submit to a blood, breath, or urine test when stopped for reasonable  
16 cause by a police officer.

17

## 18 **EXAMINATIONS**

### 19 **GENERAL KNOWLEDGE**

20 All applicants must take the General Knowledge, Air Brakes, Passenger and School Bus tests,  
21 either written or oral, and pass it with a least an 80% score. All applicants must pass an air brake  
22 test or the commercial driver's license will be restricted to vehicles without air brakes.

23 Endorsement tests can be taken at the same time as the general knowledge test or at a later time.

24

### 25 **SKILLS TEST**

26 The Skills Test, if required, will not be given until you have passed all parts of the written  
27 examination. Each section of the Skills Test (i.e., Pre-Trip Inspection, Basic Controls and Road  
28 Test) must be passed in sequence in order to proceed to the next section. All Skills Tests will be  
29 administered by certified third-party examiners or the Kentucky State Police.

30

### 31 **ENDORSEMENTS**



- 1 • T Double/Triple Trailer
- 2 • P Passenger
- 3 • N Tank
- 4 • H Hazardous Materials
- 5 • S School Bus
- 6 • X Tank/Hazardous Materials combined

7

8 Adding of a Passenger endorsement will require a complete skills test in a passenger vehicle  
9 meeting the classification of the license being applied for.

10

11 Adding of a School Bus endorsement will require qualification for a passenger vehicle and a  
12 complete skills test in a school bus of the same vehicle group as the school bus driver will drive.

13

14 To remove an L or Z restriction, the applicant must perform a pre-trip inspection.

15 Class A can use a class A or B vehicle.

16 Class B can only use a class B vehicle.

17 Class C can only use a class C vehicle.

18

19 To remove an Automatic Transmission (E) restriction, the applicant must retake the on-road  
20 driving portion of the skills test in a Class A or Class B manual transmission vehicle.

21

## 22 **DRIVER RESPONSIBILITIES**

23 The driver privilege carries with it many responsibilities. The driver is responsible for their  
24 actions. There are a number of areas that the license holder must be aware of in order to maintain  
25 the privilege of driving in Kentucky. No person who operates a commercial motor vehicle is  
26 allowed to have more than one (1) driver's license at a time.

27

28 If you change your name or address, you are required to notify the Kentucky Department of  
29 Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, in writing, with copies of documents making this  
30 change legal. An application for a change of name or address must be made to the Department of  
31 Transportation on a driver's license application form. Since this change is considered as a

1 duplicate or reissuance license, a monetary fee is required.

2

3 Any Kentucky licensed commercial motor vehicle driver who receives an out-of-state violation  
4 (other than parking violations) must notify the Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division  
5 of Motor Vehicles, within thirty (30) days after the date of the violation.

6

7 Each driver who has their license suspended, revoked, cancelled or expired by any state, who  
8 loses the privilege of driving a commercial motor vehicle in any state for a period or is  
9 disqualified from driving a commercial motor vehicle for any period, must notify his/her  
10 employer before the end of the business day following the day the driver received notice of that  
11 fact.

12

13 Anyone who applies to be a commercial motor vehicle driver must provide the employer, at the  
14 time of application, with the following information for the ten (10) preceding years:

- 15 • a list of names and addresses of previous employers for whom the applicant drove a  
16 commercial motor vehicle;
- 17 • the dates of such employment; and
- 18 • the reason for termination.

19 Applicants must certify that all information furnished is true and complete. An employer may  
20 require an applicant to provide additional information.

21

22 A driver will be disqualified from driving based upon the current Kentucky State Law and  
23 Regulations as well as federal CDL requirements.

24

### 25 **LOW CLEARANCE AREAS**

26 It is vital for you, the driver, to know how tall your vehicle is. Throughout your career as a driver  
27 you will go under hundreds, if not thousands of overpasses. Most of the overpasses won't be an  
28 issue, but there will be times where the height of the bridge or overpass has restrictions. There  
29 should always be a low clearance sign posted if there are height restrictions. At times, you may  
30 be on a multi-lane road and part of the overpass is low and the other lane is high enough for you  
31 to pass. Always be mindful of this.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

When route planning, be mindful of the roads you are traveling. Watch for signs and be prepared to deviate if necessary.

**ROAD AND BRIDGE RESTRICTIONS**

Whether driving a bus or a truck, you must be aware of weight restrictions for roads and bridges. You must also be aware that if your vehicle exceeds the limit of the bridge or road, you are not to travel it, even if only 1/2 of your vehicle is on the bridge at a time. The bridge formula has taken this into consideration when the restrictions were put into place.

Per the Federal Highway Management Administration, “Federal law states that two or more consecutive axles may not exceed the weight computed by the Bridge Formula even though single axles, tandem axles, and gross vehicle weights are within legal limits. As a result, the axle group that includes the entire truck—sometimes called the "outer bridge" group—must comply with the Bridge Formula. Interior combinations of axles, such as the "tractor bridge" (axles 1, 2, and 3) and "trailer bridge" (axles 2, 3, 4, and 5) must also comply with weights computed by the Bridge Formula.”

Driving a school bus or truck over a road or bridge that has weight restrictions can damage the vehicle and further damage the road or bridge.

When route planning, be aware that if using a Global Positioning System (GPS) or other trip routing software, bridge weights and overpass height and restrictions may not be up to date.

**DOT INSPECTIONS**

As a CDL driver, you need to be aware of basic CDL requirements if you drive a vehicle which requires a US DOT Number. A Kentucky school bus does not, however, there may be times that you decide to drive for a common carrier or other over the road company.

**WEIGH STATIONS**

Kentucky requires every vehicle that requires a US DOT number and weighs more than more

1 than 10,001 lbs. to stop at a weigh station. There are signs along the roadside which indicate the  
2 location of a weigh station, follow these signs as you approach the weigh stations. Once at the  
3 weigh station, follow the signal lights to determine what to do. Always pull over for an  
4 inspection if told to do so.

5

## 6 **ROADSIDE INSPECTIONS**

7 There are seven types of roadside inspections. These inspections are to ensure the safety  
8 conditions of the commercial motor vehicles.

9

10 **Level 1- Full Inspection-** This examines the vehicle and the driver credentials. This is the most  
11 intensive inspection as the vehicle is checked on the outside as well as underneath.

12 **Level 2- Walk-Around** – This is less invasive as it does not include checking under the CMV.

13 **Level 3 – Driver Only** – This inspection looks at the drivers credentials to ensure that  
14 everything is in order. The inspection is to check your commercial driver’s license, medical  
15 examiner’s certificate, Skills Performance Evaluation certificate (if applicable), record of duty  
16 status, hours of service, seatbelt usage, and vehicle inspection reports.

17 **Level 4 – Special Study** – These are rare and occur when there has been a trend that has been  
18 observed in the industry.

19 **Level 5 – Vehicle Only-** This checks the vehicle only. It is a level one minus the driver check.

20 **Level 6 – Radioactive Materials** – This is only if you haul radioactive materials.

21 **Level 7 – Small Passenger Vehicles** – These inspections are jurisdictionally mandated and don’t  
22 fall under any of the other roadside inspection areas. CMV’s such as school buses, limousines,  
23 taxis, shared-ride transportation, hotel courtesy shuttles and other intrastate/intra-provincial  
24 operations are all subject to this type of inspection.

25

## 26 **PENALTIES AND FINES**

27 This section applies to any person driving a commercial motor vehicle that is non-government  
28 owned. As a school bus driver, for a public school district, these do not apply during the time  
29 you are driving for the public school.

30

1 **HOURS OF SERVICE**

2 **MAXIMUM DRIVING TIME**

3 49 CFR §395.5 dictates the maximum driving time for passenger-carrying vehicles.

4

5 Subject to the exceptions and exemptions in §395.1:

6 (a) No motor carrier shall permit or require any driver used by it to drive a passenger-carrying  
7 commercial motor vehicle, nor shall any such driver drive a passenger-carrying commercial  
8 motor vehicle:

9 (1) More than 10 hours following 8 consecutive hours off duty; or

10 (2) For any period after having been on duty 15 hours following 8 consecutive hours off  
11 duty.

12 (b) No motor carrier shall permit or require a driver of a passenger-carrying commercial motor  
13 vehicle to drive, nor shall any driver drive a passenger-carrying commercial motor vehicle,  
14 regardless of the number of motor carriers using the driver's services, for any period after—

15 (1) Having been on duty 60 hours in any 7 consecutive days if the employing motor  
16 carrier does not operate commercial motor vehicles every day of the week; or

17 (2) Having been on duty 70 hours in any period of 8 consecutive days if the employing  
18 motor carrier operates commercial motor vehicles every day of the week.

19

20 **10-HOUR DRIVING LIMIT**

21 This regulation is found in 49 CFR 395.5(a) (2). You are allowed 10 hours of driving time after 8  
22 consecutive hours off duty. There is no limit on how many of those hours you are allowed to  
23 drive at one time — you may drive for as little as a few minutes or as much as 10 hours in a row.

24 Once you have driven a total of 10 hours, you have reached the driving limit and must be off  
25 duty for another 8 consecutive hours before driving a commercial motor vehicle again. The 8  
26 consecutive hours may consist of off duty, sleeper berth, or any combination of the two. There  
27 must be no on-duty or driving time during those 8 hours.

28

29 Example: You have had 8 consecutive hours off. You come to work at 7:00 a.m. and  
30 drive from 8:00 a.m. until 6:00 p.m., you must not drive again until you have at least 8  
31 consecutive hours off. You may do other work after 6:00 p.m., but you cannot do any

1 more driving of a commercial motor vehicle.

2  
3 **ON-DUTY TIME**

4 The 15-hour and 60/70-hour limits are based on how many hours you work over a period of time.  
5 Just what kind of work is included in on-duty time? It includes all time you are working or are  
6 required to be ready to work, for any employer. Specifically, it includes the following activities:  
7

- 8 • All time at a bus station, yard, terminal, or other facility of a motor carrier or customer,  
9 unless you have been relieved from duty by the motor carrier;
- 10 • All time inspecting or servicing your vehicle, including fueling it and washing it;
- 11 • All driving time;
- 12 • All other time in a commercial motor vehicle unless you are resting in a sleeper berth;
- 13 • All time loading, unloading, supervising, or attending your motor coach/bus, or handling  
14 paperwork for trips;
- 15 • All time taking care of your vehicle when it is broken down;
- 16 • All time spent providing a breath, saliva, or urine sample for drug/alcohol testing,  
17 including travel to
- 18 • and from the collection site;
- 19 • All time spent doing any other work for a motor carrier, including giving or receiving  
20 training and driving a company car; and
- 21 • All time spent doing paid work for anyone who is not a motor carrier, such as a part-time  
22 job at a local restaurant.

23  
24 The bottom line is that on-duty time includes all time you are working for a motor carrier,  
25 whether paid or not, and all time you are doing paid work for anyone else. The definition of on-  
26 duty time is found in 49 CFR 395.2.  
27

28 **HANDLING AND DOCUMENTING CARGO**

29 This section does not apply to public school bus drivers, but does apply for any other CMV.

30  
31 If your cargo is loaded wrong or not secured properly, it can be a danger to yourself or others.

1 Improperly secured cargo can fall off and cause traffic problems where someone could be hurt or  
2 killed. If you have to stop your vehicle quickly or you are involved in a crash, you, the driver  
3 could be injured or killed as well. Control of the vehicle is crucial and can be made difficult by  
4 improperly loaded cargo.

5  
6 Federal, state and local regulations vary for CMV weights and securements. There are also  
7 weight limits on many roadways. Know the rules where you will be driving.

8

### 9 **CARGO WEIGHT DISTRIBUTION**

10 You are responsible, whether you load and secure the cargo or if someone else does it for you.

11 Follow these tips:

- 12 • Always inspect your cargo.
- 13 • You must keep weights within legal limits.
- 14 • Too much weight on the steering axle can cause hard steering.
- 15 • Too little weight on the driving axle can cause poor traction.
- 16 • Weight that is loaded with a high center of gravity allows a greater risk of rollover.

17

18 Overloading has a bad effect on steering, braking and speed control. Overloaded vehicles snarl  
19 traffic flow by slowing down on hills, and even worse they may gain too much speed on  
20 downgrades. Stopping distance increases and brakes may fail when forced to work too hard.

21

### 22 **CARGO SECUREMENT**

23 Know that your cargo is secured properly and does not obstruct your view from any direction.

24 Block (front, back and sides), or brace (secures the load vertically) as needed. Tie-downs should  
25 be used on flatbeds without sides to keep cargo from shifting or falling off. Tie-downs must be of  
26 the proper type and strength. These can include ropes, straps, chains, and tensioning devices.

27 Cargo should have at least one tie-down for each ten feet of cargo length. No matter how small  
28 the cargo you must have at least 2 tie-downs.

29

30 As part of your pre-trip inspection be certain that you are not overloaded. Inspect the load and  
31 all securing devices within the first 50 miles, make adjustments as needed. Recheck every 3

1 hours or 150 miles. Recheck after every break you take.

2

### 3 **CARGO COVERING**

4 There are two basic reasons to cover cargo:

- 5 • To protect people from spilled cargo.
- 6 • To protect the cargo from the weather.

7

8 Look at your cargo covers in the mirrors from time to time as you drive. You must be able to use  
9 all mirrors for full view on all sides of your vehicle. A flapping cover can cause an accident by  
10 obstructing your view.

11

### 12 **SAFE AND EFFICIENT LOADING AND UNLOADING**

13 Cargo may be loaded or unloaded by hand or with equipment. Do not handle cargo roughly, it  
14 belongs to someone else. Before you begin the process of moving the cargo, know that you are  
15 trained on the equipment you will use to load/unload it.

16

17 Equipment to make the job easier might include:

- 18 • Two wheel hand truck
- 19 • Pipe rollers
- 20 • Crowbar
- 21 • Forklifts

22 Know how to use the equipment or ask for help.

### 23 **SECURITY AND CARGO THEFT PROCEDURES**

24 Cargo theft is a serious problem. A large portion is carried out by organized theft groups. Also,  
25 cargo scams are carried out by thieves posing as shipment carriers, collecting goods under a  
26 disguise. Consider the below steps to limit your risk to cargo theft.

- 27 • Ensure hiring procedures are tight and pre-screen individuals who might increase your  
28 risk
- 29 • Educate your staff
- 30 • Use technology
- 31 • Use traditional security, padlocks and fences



- 1 • Document policy and procedure
- 2 • Check your insurance regularly
- 3 • Perform regular safety audits
- 4 • Support law enforcement

5

## 6 **HANDLING AND DOCUMENTING HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

7 This section does not apply to public school bus drivers, but does apply for any other CMV.

8

9 Hazardous materials are products that pose a risk to health, safety and property during transport.

10 The term is shortened to HAZMAT or HM in government regulations. HM include explosives,  
11 various types of gas, solids flammable and combustible liquid, and other materials. Because of  
12 the risks involved and the potential consequences these risks impose, all levels of government  
13 regulate the handling of HM.

14

15 The Hazardous Materials Regulations (HMR) is found in parts 100-185 of title 49 of the Code of  
16 Federal Regulations. The common reference is 40 CFR 100-185. The list contained in the HMR  
17 is not all inclusive. The shipper must make the decision as to whether the material meets the  
18 definition of HM in the regulation. The regulation requires vehicles transporting HM to display  
19 diamond –shaped, square on point, warning signs called placards.

20

21 Due to the constantly changing nature of government regulations, it is impossible to guarantee  
22 absolute accuracy of materials in this section. It is the driver’s responsibility to obtain an up-to-  
23 date copy of the complete regulations.

24

25 You must have a CDL with a HM endorsement before you drive any size vehicle that is used to  
26 transport hazardous materials as defined in 49CFR 383.5. You must pass a written test about the  
27 regulations and requirements to get this endorsement. Section 9 of the COMMERCIAL DRIVER  
28 LICENSE MANUAL 2005 TESTING SYSTEM (JULY 2014) has all the information you need  
29 to pass this written test.

30

31 Important tips for a HAZMAT driver are:

- 1 • Be certain the shipper has identified and properly marked/labeled hazardous materials.
- 2 • Refuse leaking shipments.
- 3 • Placards must be visible at all times.
- 4 • Safely transport shipment without delay.
- 5 • Follow all laws and/or special rules about transport of this shipment.
- 6 • Keep hazardous materials shipping papers and emergency response information in the
- 7 proper place.

8

### 9 **PRIVATE MOTOR CARRIER OF PASSENGERS (NON-BUSINESS)**

10 This section does not apply to public school bus drivers, but does apply for any other CMV.

11

12 You are not required to fill out a log if you are a private motor carrier of passengers. If you are  
13 operating as a non-business, private motor carrier of passengers. A non-business, private motor  
14 carrier of passengers is a private motor carrier (not for hire) involved in the interstate  
15 transportation of passengers, but that transportation:

- 16 • Is not done as part of a business; and
- 17 • Is not available to the public at large.

18

19 Examples might include churches, private schools, scout groups, civic organizations, and other  
20 charitable organizations that may purchase or lease buses for the private transportation of their  
21 groups.

22

23 **Keep in mind that the standard hours-of-service limits discussed above still apply, but a log**  
24 **is not required. This regulation is found in 49 CFR 395.8(a).**

25

### 26 **POST ACCIDENT PROCEDURES**

27 This section does not apply to public school bus drivers, but does apply for any other CMV.

28

29 After an accident, a driver has the responsibility to secure the scene of the accident. They will  
30 need to keep people away from the scene and limit the spread of material, only if they can safely  
31 do so. Drivers must be sure to communicate the danger of any hazardous materials to emergency

1 response personnel and provide emergency responders with the shipping papers and emergency  
2 response information.

3

4 Follow this checklist:

- 5 • Check to see that your driving partner is OK.
- 6 • Keep shipping papers with you.
- 7 • Keep people far away and upwind.
- 8 • Warn others of the danger.
- 9 • Call for help.
- 10 • Follow your employer's instructions.

11

12 **POST-ACCIDENT ALCOHOL TEST**

13 This section does apply to public school bus drivers.

14

15 After an accident, a driver who has an accident may be required to take a post-accident alcohol  
16 test in compliance with FMCSA 382.303 or per board policy. Situations which require a post-  
17 accident alcohol test include:

- 18 • Anytime an accident occurs and there is a loss of life or a citation within 8 hours of the  
19 occurrence under state or local law for a moving traffic violation arising from the  
20 accident;
- 21 • if the accident involved bodily injury and that person receives medical treatment away  
22 from the scene of the accident; or
- 23 • there is disabling damage to the vehicle and one or more vehicles involved requires  
24 towing.

25

26 **AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA)**

27 This section does not apply to public school bus drivers, but does apply for any other CMV.

28

29 The DOT's ADA regulations require companies to provide accessible, timely Over-the-Road-  
30 Bus (OTRB) services for passengers with disabilities, including wheelchair users. The size of the  
31 company and the services provided by the company may determine the level of service and

1 amount of time the company has to comply with a request. Any questions regarding the  
2 requirements can be found by accessing the DOT regulation 49 CFR Part 37 (H). OTRB  
3 operators cannot discriminate against individuals with disabilities.

4  
5 Per the FMCSA, it is discrimination if an OTRB operator:

- 6 • Denies transportation based on a disability. Operators can deny service to any passenger  
7 for violent, seriously disruptive, or illegal behavior. However, they cannot deny service if  
8 a disability causes an appearance or involuntary behavior that may offend, annoy, or  
9 inconvenience employees or others.
- 10 • Requests persons other than employees (i.e., family members or travel companions) to  
11 assist passengers with disabilities, unless a passenger requests or consents to help from  
12 such persons.
- 13 • Requires or asks a passenger with a disability to reschedule a trip, or travel at a time other  
14 than the passenger's requested time.
- 15 • Fails to provide reservation services to passengers with disabilities that are equivalent to  
16 those provided other passengers.

17

18 If you observe a safety issue, these should be reported as soon as possible. A safety complaint is  
19 related to the mechanical condition of the bus (bald tires, brakes that might be faulty, lights not  
20 properly operating, etc.) or to the actions or physical condition of the driver during the trip. For  
21 example, a driver who is observed texting while driving, nodding off, speeding, or driving in  
22 excess of legal driving hours (Hours of Service).

23

#### 24 WHISTLE BLOWER/COERCION

25 Drivers, technicians and all other employees that affect the safety of a commercial motor vehicle  
26 have the right to question the safety practices without the risk of losing their job or being subject  
27 to retaliation for stating a safety concern. The occupational safety and health administration's  
28 whistleblower statutes protect drivers from retaliation. These can be found in 29 CFR part 1978.  
29 Any complaints can be reported directly to OSHA. If you file a complaint, OSHA will contact  
30 you to determine whether to conduct an investigation. You **must** respond to OSHA's follow-up  
31 contact or your complaint will be dismissed. To report an emergency, fatality, or imminent life

1 threatening situation please call toll free number immediately to 1-800-321-OSHA (6742).

2

3 Per the FMCSA, coercion occurs when a motor carrier, shipper, receiver, or transportation  
4 intermediary threatens to withhold work from, take employment action against, or punish a  
5 driver for refusing to operate in violation of certain provisions of the Federal Motor Carrier  
6 Safety Regulations (FMCSRs), Hazardous Materials Regulations (HMRs) and the Federal Motor  
7 Carrier Commercial Regulations (FMCCRs). Coercion may be found to have taken place even if  
8 a violation has not occurred. An example of coercion is when a motor carrier terminates a driver  
9 for refusing to accept a load that would require the driver to violate the hours of service  
10 requirements. The following must have occurred in order for coercion to have existed:

11

12 A motor carrier, shipper, receiver, or transportation intermediary request a driver to perform a  
13 task that would result in the driver violating certain provisions of the FMCSRs, HMRs, or  
14 the FMCCRs;

15

16 The driver informs the motor carrier, shipper, receiver, or transportation intermediary of the  
17 violation that would occur if the task is performed, such as driving over the hours of service  
18 limits or creating unsafe driving conditions; and

19

20 The motor carrier shipper, receiver, or transportation intermediary make a threat or take action  
21 against the driver's employment or work opportunities to get the driver to take the load despite  
22 the regulatory violation that would occur.

23

24 To address the problem of coercion, the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration (FMCSA)  
25 adopted the [Prohibiting Coercion of Commercial Motor Vehicle Drivers \(Coercion Rule\)](#). The  
26 Coercion Rule explicitly prohibits motor carriers, shippers, receivers and transportation  
27 intermediaries from coercing drivers to operate in violation of certain FMCSA regulations,  
28 including the drivers' hours-of-service limits, the commercial driver's license (CDL) regulations,  
29 the associated drug and alcohol testing rules, HMRs, and some of the FMCCRs. The Coercion  
30 Rule allows drivers to report incidents of coercion to FMCSA and authorizes FMCSA to issue  
31 penalties against motor carriers, shippers, receivers, or transportation intermediaries that have

1 coerced drivers.

2

### 3 **SKILLS REVIEW**

4 This section does apply to public school bus drivers.

5

6 This section will discuss the skills needed to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle. Many  
7 have been discussed in previous chapters, but are a reminder as the driver prepares for their CDL  
8 test. A school bus driver must have a comprehensive knowledge of the procedures used in  
9 operating a commercial vehicle safely.

10

### 11 **BASIC CONTROL**

12 Safe operation of a commercial vehicle calls for skills in:

#### 13 **ACCELERATING**

- 14 • Partly engage clutch before taking your foot off of the brake.
- 15 • Use the parking brake to keep from rolling back and release only when you have enough  
16 power to keep you from rolling back.

17

#### 18 **STEERING**

- 19 • Hold steering wheel firmly with both hands, either in the 9-3 or 10-2 positions.
- 20 • Hands should be on opposite sides of the wheel.
- 21 • **BACK UP SAFELY**
- 22 • Back up slowly.
- 23 • Use the mirrors.
- 24 • Correct drift of a bus by turning the top of the steering wheel in the direction that the rear  
25 of the bus is drifting.
- 26 • Pull forward to reposition the vehicle as needed.
- 27 • Use a helper and hand signals.
- 28 • Back and turn to the driver's side when possible.
- 29 • Avoid backing, when you can.

30

#### 31 **SHIFTING GEARS**

- 1 • Correct shifting of gears is necessary for control of your vehicle.
- 2 • Many manual transmissions (stick-shifts) for heavy vehicles must be double-clutched.
- 3 • Downshift before going down a hill.
- 4 • Downshift before entering a curve.

5

## 6 **SCANNING**

- 7 • Seeing what is around you is important.
- 8 • Look ahead the distance the vehicle would travel in twelve to fifteen (12-15) seconds (at  
9 highway speeds that is about ¼ mile) for:
  - 10 • traffic
  - 11 • road conditions
  - 12 • signs
- 13 • Look to the sides and rear, using mirrors for:
  - 14 • checking traffic
  - 15 • checking your vehicles and tires
  - 16 • lane changes, turns, merges and tight moves
- 17 • Check mirrors quickly and return attention to road ahead.
- 18 • Curved mirrors, as well as convex mirrors, make things seem farther away than they are.
- 19 • There are blind spots that your mirrors cannot show you.

20

## 21 **COMMUNICATING**

- 22 • Signaling what you will do is very important for safety.
- 23 • Signal early before you turn or change lanes.
- 24 • Cancel your signal after the turn or lane change.
- 25 • Flash the brake lights to warn other drivers that you will need to slow down for a hazard  
26 or stop.
- 27 • Use the four-way emergency flashers when moving slowly or when you are parked, when  
28 appropriate.
- 29 • Don't signal others to pass as it could cause an incident.
- 30 • Brake early and slow gradually for tight turns. In communicating your presence to others:

- 1 • Don't assume that others can see you.
- 2 • At night, flash lights to high beam, then back to low beam when you are about to pass a
- 3 vehicle.
- 4 • Use low beam headlights so you can be seen easier.
- 5 • When passing, tap the horn lightly or flash the high beams.
- 6 • Use the horn only when needed; otherwise, it can startle other drivers.
- 7 • When parked on the side of the road:
  - 8 • turn on four-way emergency flashers;
  - 9 • place reflective triangles within ten (10) minutes after stopping; and;
  - 10 • when putting out the triangles, hold them between yourself and the oncoming
  - 11 traffic for your safety.

12 NOTE: On a hill or curve, the rear triangle should be moved up to five hundred feet (500') to  
13 provide adequate warning.

14

### 15 **CONTROLLING SPEED (STOPPING)**

16 You may have to change your speed because of traffic, hills, weather conditions and curves.

17 Stopping distance includes:

- 18 • the distance the vehicle goes from the time your eyes see a problem to the time your brain
- 19 knows it – perception distance;
- 20 • the distance traveled from the time your brain tells your foot to move from the accelerator
- 21 until your foot pushes the brake – reaction distance; and
- 22 • the distance it takes to stop once the brakes are applied – braking distance.

23

24 At 55 mph, it will take about six (5) seconds to stop. Your vehicle will travel about the distance  
25 of a football field. Perception Distance + Reaction Distance + Braking Distance= Total Stopping  
26 Distance

27

28 If you double your speed, it will take you about four (4) times the distance to stop your vehicle.  
29 Brakes on heavy vehicles are made to work better if your vehicle is loaded. Empty trucks require  
30 greater stopping distance because an empty vehicle has less traction. This may cause bouncing  
31 and wheel lockup. The heavier a vehicle is, the more work the brakes must do to stop. This



1 makes the brakes hotter.

2

3 Match your speed to the road surface:

4 • Slippery roads make the vehicle harder to turn and cause you to take longer to stop. Slow  
5 down gradually and allow much more space than is needed for ideal driving conditions.

6 • On wet roads allow for double stopping distance. Reduce speed by one third (55 mph to  
7 35 mph).

8 • On packed snow, reduce speed by one-half or more.

9 • On ice, stop driving as soon as you can safely do so.

10 • Hydroplaning may happen to a vehicle when it travels on wet roads. Tires lose road  
11 contact and have little or no traction.

12 • Speed and curves:

13 • Adjust speed for curves.

14 • Downshift before you enter a curve.

15 • Braking in a curve may cause skidding.

16 • Vehicles with a high center of gravity can roll over at the speed limit posted for a curve.

17 • Be able to stop within the distance you can see ahead.

18 • Generally, the safest speed in heavy traffic is the speed of other vehicles.

19 • Speed on downgrades – shift to a lower gear before starting down a grade or hill.

20

## 21 **VEHICLE SPATIAL AWARENESS**

22 • Space Behind

23 • Stay to the right so faster vehicles may pass.

24 • Deal with tailgaters safely by:

25 • avoiding quick lane changes;

26 • increasing your following distance;

27 • not speeding up; and/or

28 • turning on tail lights or tapping brakes lights.

29 • Space to the Sides

30 • Stay in the center of the lane.

- 1           • Avoid traveling next to other vehicles especially when coming out of tunnels.  
2            Strong winds may make it difficult to stay in your lane.
- 3           • Space Overhead – Check to be sure you always have overhead clearance.  
4            • Don't assume that the heights posted are correct.  
5            • If your vehicle tilts it could hit an object near the side of the road, drive closer to  
6            the center of the road.
- 7           • Space Below  
8            • NOTE: Most drivers forget about the clearance under the vehicles.
- 9           • Space for Turns  
10           • NOTE: Because of wide turning and off-tracking, large vehicles can hit other  
11           vehicles or objects during turns.
- 12          • Rights Turns  
13            • Turn slowly to give yourself and others more time to avoid problems.  
14            • Turn wide as you complete the turn.  
15            • Don't turn wide to the left at the beginning of the turn unless necessary.
- 16          • Left Turns  
17            • Reach the center of the intersection before you start the turn.  
18            • Use the right-hand turn lane if there are two (2) turning lanes.
- 19          • Crossing or Entering Traffic  
20            • Be sure of the size and weight of your bus.  
21            • You need a larger gap than a car to enter traffic.  
22            • Allow more room if your bus is heavily loaded.  
23            • Be sure you can get all the way across before traffic reaches you.

24

## 25 **DRIVING IN WINTER WEATHER**

- 26          • Winter pre-trip inspections should include:  
27            • antifreeze in your vehicle;  
28            • windshield wiper fluid in your vehicle;  
29            • defrosters and heaters are working properly;  
30            • windshield wipers are working properly; tire chains;

- 1 • radiator shutters are working properly; and
- 2 • that there are no exhaust system leaks which could allow poisonous carbon
- 3 monoxide to leak into your vehicle.

4

## 5 **DRIVING**

- 6 • Start engine and accelerate slowly to get the feel of the road.
- 7 • Make turns as gently as possible.
- 8 • Adjust speed to conditions.
- 9 • Adjust space to conditions.
- 10 • Avoid getting brakes wet, use lower gear and increase RPMs.
- 11 • Gently put on brakes when going through any water. Maintain light pressure on brakes for
- 12 a short distance to heat them up in order to dry them out.

13

## 14 **DRIVING IN HOT WEATHER**

- 15 • During pre-trip inspections:
- 16 • Inspect tires every two (2) hours or one hundred (100) miles. Tire tread may separate in
- 17 hot weather.
- 18 • Check proper oil level and pressure – oil helps keep the engine cool.
- 19 • Check proper engine coolant level.
- 20 • Make sure engine coolant has antifreeze. Antifreeze helps the engine in hot weather as
- 21 well as cold. Never take off the radiator cap or any part of pressurized system until the
- 22 engine has completely cooled.
- 23 • Make sure belts are tight to avoid overheating.
- 24 • Make sure coolant hoses are not cracked or dry-rotted.

25

## 26 **DRIVING**

- 27 • Watch for bleeding tar on the road.
- 28 • High speeds will increase tire problems and make tires and engine hotter.
- 29 • Never check air pressure in hot tires. If tire is too hot to touch, remain stopped until tire
- 30 cools.

31

1 **MOUNTAIN DRIVING**

- 2 • Be in correct gear before going down steep grades.
- 3 • Older vehicles – Choose same gear you would use to go up the grade.
- 4 • Newer vehicles – Choose a gear lower than you would use to go up the grade.
- 5 • Brake properly.
- 6 • Go slow enough down a grade that light use of the brakes will keep your speed from
- 7 increasing.
- 8 • Brakes that get hot may fade.
- 9 • Use on again-off again braking with a target speed.
- 10 • Know escape ramp locations on the route. Escape ramps are made to safely stop runaway
- 11 vehicles as well as to avoid damage and prevent injury to drivers, passengers and
- 12 vehicles.

13

14 **SEEING HAZARDS**

- 15 • A hazard is any road condition or road user that is a possible danger.
- 16 • Seeing hazards lets you be prepared.
- 17 • Learn to recognize hazards.
- 18 • Slow down and drive with care if any of the following road hazards are in evidence:
- 19 • Work zones – drive slowly and use four-way flashers or brake lights to warn others.
- 20 • Drop-offs – Don't drive too near edge of road.
- 21 • Foreign objects – Try to avoid them without making sudden or unsafe moves.
- 22 • Off/On ramps:
  - 23 • Posted off-ramp speeds may not be safe for larger vehicles or heavily loaded
  - 24 vehicles.
  - 25 • Braking and turning at the same time is dangerous.
  - 26 • Slow down before the curved part of an off-ramp or on-ramp.
- 27 • Be aware of hazards such as:
  - 28 • drivers with blocked vision;
  - 29 • distracted drivers;
  - 30 • talkers;

- 1           • children;
- 2           • workers;
- 3           • disabled vehicles;
- 4           • incidents;
- 5           • shoppers;
- 6           • confused drivers;
- 7           • slow drivers;
- 8           • drivers in a hurry;
- 9           • impaired drivers;
- 10          • slow vehicles (identified with red triangle with an orange center); and
- 11          • if there is movement inside a parked car which could mean someone is about to
- 12            get out.
- 13          • Always have a plan:
- 14          • Driver body movement may be a clue for a turn or lane change.
- 15          • Watch for other drivers who can't decide which way to go.
- 16          • Look for hazards to have time to plan before an emergency.
- 17          • Be ready to act based on emergency plans.

18

## 19 **EMERGENCIES**

20 An example of a traffic emergency is when two (2) or more vehicles might crash. Vehicle  
21 emergencies can happen when tires, brakes or vehicle parts fail.

22

23 **Remember: A vehicle may be able to turn more quickly than to stop.**

24

## 25 **STEER TO AVOID A CRASH:**

- 26          • Stopping is not always the best thing to do.
- 27          • A quick turn can be made safely if the driver:
  - 28            • doesn't apply brakes when turning
  - 29            • avoids braking until the vehicle speed is less than 20 mph
  - 30            • keeps both hands on steering wheel

- 1 • “Counter-steer” (turn wheel back in other direction) once you have passed the danger.
- 2 • Steer to the right if an upcoming car has drifted into your lane. Don’t turn any more than
- 3 necessary to clear what is in your way.
- 4 • Leave the road if necessary.
- 5 • Brake gently to avoid skidding.
- 6 • Keep one (1) set of wheels on the pavement, when possible.
- 7 • Stay on the shoulder if possible.
- 8 • If the driver must return to the road before stopping:
  - 9 • reduce speed or even stop if safe to do so
  - 10 • turn enough to get back on the road
  - 11 • counter-steer immediately when front tires are on the road

12

### 13 **STOPPING QUICKLY AND SAFELY**

- 14 • Controlled Braking:
  - 15 • Apply brakes as hard as possible without locking the wheels.
  - 16 • If wheels lock, release brakes.
  - 17 • Use brakes again, as soon as possible.
- 18 • Stab Braking:
  - 19 • Apply brakes all the way.
  - 20 • Release brakes when wheels lock up.
  - 21 • As soon as wheels start rolling again fully apply brakes.
  - 22 • Don’t jam on the brakes. If the wheels are skidding, you cannot control the
  - 23 vehicle.
  - 24 • Never disable or unhook steering axle brakes.

25

### 26 **TIRE FAILURE**

- 27 • Recognize a tire failure by:
  - 28 • sound
  - 29 • vibration
  - 30 • feel

- 1 • Hold the steering wheel firmly.
- 2 • Stay off the brake until the vehicle slows down.
- 3 • After stopping, check all the tires.

4

## 5 **SKID CONTROL AND RECOVERY**

- 6 • Five (5) main causes of skids are:
  - 7 • over-braking
  - 8 • over-steering
  - 9 • over-accelerating
  - 10 • driving too fast for road conditions
  - 11 • not enough weight on front axle

12

## 13 **DRIVE WHEEL SKIDS**

14 Drive wheel skids caused by acceleration can be stopped easily by taking your foot off the  
15 accelerator.

- 16 • Drive wheel braking skids can be corrected by:
  - 17 • stopping braking
  - 18 • turning quickly in the direction of the skid
  - 19 • counter-steering

20

## 21 **FRONT-WHEEL SKIDS**

22 Front wheel skids are caused by driving too fast for the conditions. The front end tends to go in a  
23 straight line no matter how much you turn the steering wheel. Slow down as quickly as possible  
24 without skidding.

25

## 26 **STAY ALERT AND FIT**

- 27 • Stay alert by:
  - 28 • getting enough sleep
  - 29 • scheduling trips during hours you are normally awake and can remain alert
  - 30 • not taking medicine that has a label warning against operating vehicles

- 1           • keeping cool
- 2           • taking short breaks before you feel drowsy
- 3    • When sleepy:
- 4           • stop driving
- 5           • sleep or take a nap
- 6           • avoid taking drugs to keep you awake

7           **Note: Only sleep can overcome being tired.**

## 9    **AIR BRAKE SYSTEMS**

10   An air brake system is made up of three (3) parts.

- 11       • The service brake system applies and releases the brakes when you use the brake pedal
- 12       when driving.
- 13       • The parking brake system applies and releases the parking brake when you use the
- 14       parking brake control.
- 15       • The emergency brake system uses parts of the service and parking systems to stop the
- 16       vehicle if the service brake system fails.
- 17       • Air brakes use compressed air to make the brakes work.
- 18       • Air brakes are a safe way of stopping large vehicles if the brakes are well kept and used
- 19       correctly.

## 21   **PARTS OF THE AIR BRAKE SYSTEM**

- 22       • The air compressor pumps air into the air storage tanks. If the compressor has its own oil
- 23       supply, check the oil level before driving.
- 24       • The air compressor governor turns the air compressor on and off and controls the air
- 25       being pumped into the tanks.
- 26       • The air storage tanks hold compressed air- enough air to let the brakes be used several
- 27       times even if the air compressor stops working.

## 29    **AIR TANK DRAINS**

- 30       • Compressed air has some water and oil in it.



- 1 • Water and compressor oil tend to collect in the bottom of the air tank.
- 2 • Water can freeze in parts of the brake system, making the brakes fail.
- 3 • Drain valves let you drain the unwanted oil and water that collects in the bottom of the
- 4 tank.
- 5 • Tanks with manual valves must be drained by hand after each day of driving.
- 6 • Tanks with automatic valves drain the water and oil by themselves.

7

### 8 **ALCOHOL EVAPORATOR (FOUND ON SOME VEHICLES)**

- 9 • The alcohol evaporator puts alcohol into the air system.
- 10 • Alcohol helps keep ice from forming in air brake valves and parts.
- 11 • Ice can make the brakes stop working. Check the alcohol container every day during cold
- 12 weather and fill when needed.
- 13 • Drain air tanks daily if tank has a manual valve (see your local district procedure on this).

14

### 15 **SAFETY VALVE**

- 16 • The safety valve protects the tank and the rest of the system from too much pressure.
- 17 • The brake pedal controls pressure to the brakes.
- 18 • Pushing the pedal down harder applies more air pressure.

19

### 20 **FOUNDATION BRAKES**

21 The foundation brakes are the brakes at each wheel.

22 The most common type is the S-cam drum brake.

23 Other types are wedge and disc brakes.

24

### 25 **SUPPLY PRESSURE GAUGE**

26 The supply pressure gauge tells how much pressure is in the air tanks. All vehicles have a supply  
27 pressure gauge.

28

### 29 **LOW AIR PRESSURE WARNING SIGNAL**

30 The low air pressure warning signal:

- 31 • is required on vehicles with air brakes;

- 1 • must come on before the air pressure falls below 60 PSI;
- 2 • is usually a red light; and
- 3 • means, when it comes on, that you should stop right away and park your vehicle safely.

4

## 5 **STOP LIGHT SWITCH**

6 The stop light switch turns on the brake lights when you put on the air brakes to warn drivers  
7 behind you.

8

## 9 **SPRING BRAKES**

- 10 • hold emergency and parking brakes on;
- 11 • are held back by air pressure when driving;
- 12 • put the brakes on with their very powerful springs if the air pressure is removed; and
- 13 • depend, for their braking power, on brakes being in adjustment.

14

## 15 **PARKING BRAKE CONTROLS**

16 The park brake valve is used to apply the spring brakes slowly if service brakes fail.

- 17 • Dual parking control valves consist of:
  - 18 ○ one (1) valve used to put on the spring brakes for parking; and
  - 19 ○ another valve using pressure from a separate tank to release the spring brakes so  
20 you can move the vehicle in an emergency.

21

## 22 **INSPECTING AIR BRAKE SYSTEMS**

- 23 • Check air compressor drive belt.
- 24 • Check manual slack adjusters on S-cam brakes with the vehicle parked on level ground,  
25 wheels chocked (held in place by blocks) and parking brake off.
- 26 • Check brake drums (or discs), linings and hoses.
- 27 • Test low-pressure warning signal.
- 28 • Check that spring brakes are activated automatically.
- 29 • Test air leakage rate:
  - 30 ○ Loss rate should be less than 2 PSI in one 1 minute for single vehicles with engine  
31 off, brakes released.

1                   ○ Loss rate should be less than 3 PSI in one 1 minute for single vehicles with the  
2                   service brake on.

3                   • Check air compressor governor cut-in and out pressure.

4                   • Test parking brake.

5                   • Test service brakes:

6                   • Move the vehicle forward slowly and apply the brakes firmly.

7                   • Note any vehicle “pulling” to one side, unusual feel or delayed stopping action.

8

1 **USING AIR BRAKES**

- 2 • For a normal stop, use brake pedal to control the pressure so the vehicle comes to a  
3 smooth, safe stop.
- 4 • For emergency stops, brake so you can steer safely and the vehicle stays in a straight line.
- 5 • Controlled braking requires you to:
  - 6 • firmly apply brakes
  - 7 • release brakes if wheels slide
  - 8 • reapply brakes
- 9 • Stab braking requires that you:
  - 10 • press the brake pedal as hard as you can
  - 11 • release the brakes when the wheels lock up
  - 12 • put the brakes on again when the wheels start rolling

13  
14 **STOPPING DISTANCE**

15 Air brakes, unlike hydraulic brakes, take time to work after the brake pedal is pushed.  
16 It takes one-half of a second or more for the air to flow through the lines to the brakes.  
17 On dry pavement, the air brake lag distance at 55 mph is about thirty-two feet (32').

18  
19 Stopping distance is the total of four factors:

20 Perception Distance + Reaction + Effective Braking Distance + Brake Lag Distance = Stopping  
21 Distance

22  
23 **BRAKING ON DOWNGRADES**

24 When you try to slow down from a high speed, often or quickly, the brakes get too hot. Brakes  
25 will fade when they get too hot and you will have to push harder to get the same stopping force.  
26 Use a low gear. On again-off again techniques with a target speed is the approved downhill  
27 braking procedure. Brake system adjustments must be balanced to give the same braking to each  
28 wheel.

29  
30 **PARKING BRAKE**

31 Use the parking brake any time you park the vehicle (or load/unload students). Let hot brakes

1 cool before applying parking brakes (chock wheels). Before using parking brakes in freezing  
2 weather, be sure to dry brakes that are wet (drive with brakes lightly applied). Parking brakes  
3 must be held by mechanical force. Drain air tanks of water and oil after each working day (see  
4 your local district procedures before doing this).

5

## 6 **SPEED MANAGEMENT AND BRAKING**

7 Whenever you double your speed, it takes approximately four (4) times as much stopping  
8 distance.

- 9 • Slow down before curves. Although the posted speed is safe for cars, it may be too high  
10 for buses.
- 11 • Stop fifty feet (50') before a drawbridge that does not have a signal light or traffic  
12 attendant.
- 13 • Adjust your speed by slowing down when going from high beams to low beams.
- 14 • Slow down and look:
  - 15 • at street car crossings
  - 16 • where a policeman or flagman is directing traffic
  - 17 • at crossings marked "exempt crossings"

18

## 19 **FOLLOWING DISTANCE**

- 20 • Use one (1) second for every ten feet (10') of vehicle length up to 40 mph
- 21 • Add one (1) second over 40 mph
- 22 • When driving on a slippery road, allow much more space for following distances

23

24 Other measures to prevent having an incident are:

- 25 • Use caution at intersections
- 26 • Know the space your bus needs to merge with traffic
- 27 • Never assume other drivers will brake to give you room
- 28 • Avoid traveling next to other vehicles
- 29 • Lane changes – you need to check your mirrors to make sure no one is alongside you or  
30 about to pass you.

- 1 • Check mirrors:
  - 2 • before you start to change lanes
  - 3 • after you have signaled your intentions
  - 4 • immediately after starting the change
  - 5 • after the change is completed
- 6 • Be cautious at railroad crossings.
  - 7 • Stop between fifteen and fifty-feet (15-50') from railroad crossings, set parking
  - 8 brake
  - 9 • Listen and look both ways for trains
  - 10 • If one train has passed, look both ways again to make sure another train isn't
  - 11 comings
  - 12 • Never change gears while crossing railroad tracks
- 13 • All drivers look ahead, but many drivers don't look far enough
- 14 • Recognize hazards such as an ice cream truck, blind intersections or a driver signaling a
- 15 turn

## 17 **RIDERS**

18 May not stand forward of the rear of the driver's seat must remain behind the standee line.  
19 There should be not standees on a Kentucky school bus, while the bus is moving. Remind riders  
20 to take carry-ons with them as they are getting off the bus.

21  
22 While on the road, the driver must supervise passengers. While driving, scan the inside of the  
23 bus as well as the road ahead. Remind riders about rules, if needed. Follow the local school  
24 district rules for handling drunk or rude drivers on the road. Remind riders to watch their step  
25 when leaving the bus. Never drive with an open emergency exit door or window.

26  
27 Any item transported on a school bus must be stored in the undercarriage of the bus. The driver  
28 is the only person who shall store or retrieve items from undercarriage. If an item is being carried  
29 inside the bus, it must fit in the lap of the student and shall not infringe upon the space of other  
30 riders. Tall items are to be placed on the floor of bus and held by the student and shall not  
31 infringe upon other riders space. Each school district shall have a policy of what can and cannot

1 be transported on the bus.

2

3 **AFTER-TRIP INSPECTION**

4 Inspect your bus after every shift. Report any damage or mechanical problems.

5

6 **PROHIBITED PRACTICES**

7 Don't do anything that distracts you from driving.

8 Don't tow or push a bus with riders on it unless getting passengers off would be dangerous.

9 Don't refuel a bus when riders are on board.

10 Don't use brake interlocks when safety requires use of a parking brake.

1 **STATE TRAINING FORMS**

2  
3 Kentucky Department of Education  
4 Pupil Transportation Branch

5  
6 **INTRODUCTION**

7 These forms are to be used to test students throughout their curriculum. Included in the forms is  
8 an interview sheet school districts may utilize upon hiring to help ensure they are being fair and  
9 consistent. It is not a required form. All other forms in this section are required. The tests in this  
10 section are the only tests that are to be utilized for the core curriculum. A school district may  
11 require additional training, but they are not to be included in the drivers state mandated training  
12 file.

13  
14 Section 1 of this manual provides step-by-step procedure in training drivers. The core curriculum  
15 is everything up to Driver Review 1 and initially certifies a driver to drive students. If Driver  
16 Review 1-3 are not completed, a driver is no longer certified at that point. There are strict  
17 guidelines that must be followed to keep a driver certified after the initial certification.

18  
19 A minimum of eighty percent (80%) must be scored on each activity to pass. Any test with less  
20 than eighty percent (80%) will need to be retaken. Only the passing test is to be included in the  
21 driver's record.

22  
23 Driver Review 1- Within 5 school days of being certified.

24 Driver Review 2 – After 30 calendar days but within 45 calendar days of completing Driver  
25 Review 1, or 45 days after the start of the school year if the driver was trained during the  
26 summer.

27 Driver Review 3- Within 3-6 months of completing Driver Review 2.

28  
29 Only a certified Kentucky School Bus Driver Trainer may have access to the score key. This can  
30 be obtained by contacting the Kentucky Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Branch.

31



1 **INTERVIEW SHEET**

2  
3 CANDIDATE NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

4  
5 DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR/DIRECTOR NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

6  
7 **INTERVIEW**

8 TOTAL SCORE POSSIBLE: 50

9 SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

10  
11  
12 1. Personal Cleanliness and Wearing Apparel – 10 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

13  
14 2. Personality – 10 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

15  
16 3. General Attitude – 15 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

17  
18 4. Why do you want to be a school bus driver? 3 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

19  
20 5. What qualifications do you have? 3 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

21  
22 6. Do you have a plan for pupil management? (Explain) 3 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

23  
24 7. Do you have previous over-the-road driving experience in a bus, truck or extended auto travel?

25  
26 3 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

27  
28 8. Why should we consider you for this job? 3 Points Possible \_\_\_\_\_

29  
30

31

**ROAD TEST**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

Student followed instruction? Yes No

Student was open to advice? Yes No

Check the steering technique used:

Hand over Hand \_\_\_\_

Push-Pull \_\_\_\_

Palm \_\_\_\_

Hook \_\_\_\_

Other \_\_\_\_

Was the student able to backing the vehicle in straight line using mirrors only? Yes No

Did the student consistently perform a visual scan? Yes No

Hand position on wheel? Acceptable \_\_\_\_ Unacceptable \_\_\_\_

Right foot positioning on pedal? Acceptable \_\_\_\_ Unacceptable \_\_\_\_

Adaptability to bus size? Acceptable \_\_\_\_ Unacceptable \_\_\_\_

Comments:

Driver Training Instructor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

Students Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

1  
2  
3

**“VEHICLE OPERATION PART I”  
BEHIND THE WHEEL DRIVING EXERCISE  
ONE HOUR REQUIRED**

NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

**BASIC DRIVING SKILLS**

\*\*Drivers are to follow the law and good driving procedures at all times. \*\*

	<u>Pass/Fail</u>	<u>Comments</u>
1. Perform Pre-Trip Inspection	Pass/Fail	
2. Knowledge of Bus Controls and Gauges	Pass/Fail	
3. Seat Belt Fastened	Pass/Fail	
4. Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel 9 & 3 or 10 & 2	Pass/Fail	
5. Proper Foot Positioning	Pass/Fail	
6. Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring	Pass/Fail	
7. Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals	Pass/Fail	
8. Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only	Pass/Fail	
9. Coachability	Pass/Fail	

Comments:

INSTRUCTOR'S NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

1 **“VEHICLE OPERATION PART II”**  
2 **BEHIND THE WHEEL DRIVING EXERCISE**  
3 **ONE HOUR REQUIRED**  
4

5 Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
6

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**\*\*Drivers are to follow the law and good driving procedures at all times. \*\***

	<u>Pass/Fail</u>	<u>Comments</u>
1. Perform Pre-Trip Inspection	Pass/Fail	
2. Knowledge of Bus Controls and Gauges	Pass/Fail	
3. Seat Belt Fastened	Pass/Fail	
4. Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel 9 & 3 or 10 & 2	Pass/Fail	
5. Proper Foot Positioning	Pass/Fail	
6. Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring	Pass/Fail	
7. Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals	Pass/Fail	
8. Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only	Pass/Fail	
9. Proper Use of Bus Controls	Pass/Fail	
10. Knowledge of Bus Gauges Placement	Pass/Fail	
11. Proper Lane Positioning	Pass/Fail	
12. Correct Lane Choice	Pass/Fail	
13. Coachability	Pass/Fail	

Comments:

INSTRUCTOR'S NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

**“VEHICLE OPERATION PART III”  
BEHIND THE WHEEL DRIVING EXERCISE  
ONE HOUR REQUIRED**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*Drivers are to follow the law and good driving procedures at all times.\*\*

	<u>Pass/Fail</u>	<u>Comments</u>
1. Perform Pre-Trip Inspection	Pass/Fail	
2. Knowledge of Bus Controls and Gauges	Pass/Fail	
3. Seat Belt Fastened	Pass/Fail	
4. Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel	Pass/Fail	
5. Proper Foot Positioning	Pass/Fail	
6. Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring	Pass/Fail	
7. Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals	Pass/Fail	
8. Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only	Pass/Fail	
9. Proper Use of Bus Controls	Pass/Fail	
10. Knowledge of Bus Gauges Placement	Pass/Fail	
11. Proper Lane Positioning	Pass/Fail	
12. Correct Lane Choice	Pass/Fail	
13. Performance of a Legal and Accepted Two Point Turnabout (Back in, Pull out only)	Pass/Fail	
14. Maintain Adequate Minimum Following Distance	Pass/Fail	
15. Speed for Conditions	Pass/Fail	
16. Intersection Negotiation and Right of Ways	Pass/Fail	
17. Use of Proper Gear for all Situations	Pass/Fail	
18. Coachability	Pass/Fail	

Comments:

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

1 **PROPER SCORING FOR VEHICLE AT SPEED**

2

3 The scoring of a Kentucky School bus driver student is to help determine if a student has mastered an area.  
4 These are pass or fail areas. Any test area that is failed may be redone until the student passes. It is not  
5 necessary to repeat the entire course if the student has not passed a specific section. As the instructor, a  
6 student should be given an opportunity to practice before being tested.

7

8 For the final section of the vehicle at speed, there are points associated with the testing. This is the same type  
9 of testing score that is given for the CDL test. For this area there are two definitions that will need to be  
10 understood.

11

12 Encroachments –Touching or crossing over a boundary line or cone with any portion of the bus.

13

14 Pull-ups – Stopping and reversing direction to correct a movement or maneuver. Stopping without changing  
15 direction is not a pull-up.

16

17 The door must remained closed for all tests, unless it is a required step in the process. No bus shall back up  
18 during the test, unless it is a required step in the process. Opening the door or backing up, if not a required  
19 step in the process, is an automatic failure.

20

21 **VEHICLE AT SPEED SECTION INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING TESTS:**

- 22 Faulty Bus
- 23 Right Turn
- 24 Diminishing Clearance
- 25 Straight Line
- 26 Serpentine
- 27 Offset Alley
- 28 Stop Line
- 29 Straight Line Backing
- 30 Offset left/right
- 31 Parallel Parking Door Side
- 32 Parallel Parking Driver Side
- 33 Alley Dock
- 34 Student Loading
- 35 Rail Road

36

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**RIGHT TURN**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1. Checked mirrors.   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Used correct turn signal.                                  | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Approach in the proper lane.                               | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Checked traffic in both directions.                        | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Turned appropriately. Not too short or wide. No cones hit. | _____ | _____ |
| 6. Appropriate speed for conditions.                          | _____ | _____ |
| 7. Used hand over hand steering.                              | _____ | _____ |
| 8. Completed the exercise.                                    | _____ | _____ |

Comments:

---

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**DIMINISHING CLEARANCE**

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1. Navigated the section smoothly.                   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Did not stop/jerk in forward motions.             | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Did not hit cones/markers.                        | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Followed instructions and completed the exercise. | _____ | _____ |

Comments:

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**STRAIGHT LINE**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1. Navigated the section smoothly.                   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Did not stop/jerk in forward motions.             | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Did not stop the bus during the exercise.         | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Did not hit more than two markers.                | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Followed instructions and completed the exercise. | _____ | _____ |

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**BACK UP**

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1. Navigated the section smoothly.                     | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Used the horn at final stop.                        | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Did not hit the marking standard/cones backing.     | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Did not hit the marking standard/cones pulling out. | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Centered the bus within 6 inches or less.           | _____ | _____ |
| 6. Stopped within 24" of the rear barrier.             | _____ | _____ |
| 7. Followed instructions and completed the exercise.   | _____ | _____ |

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_



**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**SERPENTINE**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1. Navigated the section smoothly.                   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Did not stop/jerk in forward motions.             | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Did not stop the bus during the exercise.         | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Did not hit any cones during the exercise.        | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Followed instructions and completed the exercise. | _____ | _____ |

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**OFFSET ALLEY**

SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1. Navigated the section smoothly.                   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Did not stop/jerk in forward motions.             | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Did not stop the bus during the exercise.         | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Hit one or less cones.                            | _____ | _____ |
| 5. Followed instructions and completed the exercise. | _____ | _____ |

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**RAILROAD CROSSING**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

**A driver must pass each step before moving on to the next part. Railroad crossing is a critical component to the safety of students and should be done with accuracy 100% of the time.**

**APPROACH**

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Tapped brakes four to five (4-5) times | Pass/Fail |
| 2. Checked outside mirrors                | Pass/Fail |
| 3. Checked inside rearview mirror         | Pass/Fail |
| 4. Activated four-way flashers (200 Feet) | Pass/Fail |

**STOP**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 5. Set parking brake   | Pass/Fail |
| 6. Stopped in right lane of roadway                                      | Pass/Fail |
| 7. Turned off all noise makers   | Pass/Fail |
| 8. Stopped more than 15 feet and less than 50 feet from the nearest rail | Pass/Fail |
| 9. Opened door and window  | Pass/Fail |
| 10. Checked railroad tracks in both directions                           | Pass/Fail |
| 11. Checked inside rear-view mirror                                      | Pass/Fail |

**CONTINUE**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 12. Closed the door                                | Pass/Fail |
| 13. Kept bus in lowest gear while crossing tracks. | Pass/Fail |
| 14. Cleared the railroad track by 15 feet or more. | Pass/Fail |
| 15. Checked outside mirrors                        | Pass/Fail |
| 16. Checked inside rearview mirror                 | Pass/Fail |

**Comments:**

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**STOP LINE**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORED EARNED: \_\_\_\_\_

	Pass/Fail	Comments
--	-----------	----------

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1. Made one smooth stop.                  | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Did not stop over the stop line.       | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Stopped 8" or less from the stop line. | _____ | _____ |

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**FAULTY BUS**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ TIME: \_\_\_\_\_ Score: \_\_\_\_\_

A six (6) minute time limit is allowed to complete this test. The driver should find 5 defects.

DEFECT #1: \_\_\_\_\_

DEFECT #2: \_\_\_\_\_

DEFECT #3: \_\_\_\_\_

DEFECT #4: \_\_\_\_\_

DEFECT #5: \_\_\_\_\_

USED SYSTEMATIC PROCESS \_\_\_\_\_

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
**STUDENT LOADING**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ PASS/FAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

**This is a pass or fail section. A driver must pass each step before moving on to the next part. Student loading is a critical component to the safety of students and should be done with accuracy 100% of the time.**

**STUDENT LOADING ZONE**

- |     |   |           |
|-----|---|-----------|
| 1.  | Completed the visual scan.                              | Pass/Fail |
| 2.  | Tapped the brakes 4-5 times.                            | Pass/Fail |
| 3.  | Completed a visual scan.                                | Pass/Fail |
| 4.  | Activated 8-way system.                                 | Pass/Fail |
| 5.  | Bus did not stop closer than 10 feet from student sign. | Pass/Fail |
| 6.  | Keep foot on the service break, and set park brake.     | Pass/Fail |
| 7.  | Placed the gear selector in park or neutral.            | Pass/Fail |
| 8.  | Completed a visual scan.                                | Pass/Fail |
| 9.  | Activated the red loading lights.                       | Pass/Fail |
| 10. | Completed a visual scan.                                | Pass/Fail |
| 11. | Signaled the students to cross.                         | Pass/Fail |
| 12. | Instructed the students to use the hand rail.           | Pass/Fail |
| 13. | Counted the students.                                   | Pass/Fail |
| 14. | Allowed students to be seated.                          | Pass/Fail |
| 15. | Completed a visual scan.                                | Pass/Fail |

**LEAVING STUDENT LOADING ZONE**

- |     |  |           |
|-----|--|-----------|
| 16. | Closed the service door.                                 | Pass/Fail |
| 17. | Completed a visual scan.                                 | Pass/Fail |
| 18. | Deactivated the loading lights.                          | Pass/Fail |
| 19. | Place the gear selector in proper gear.                  | Pass/Fail |
| 20. | With foot on the service brake, released the park brake. | Pass/Fail |
| 21. | Completed a visual scan.                                 | Pass/Fail |

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

1 **VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
2 **PARALLEL PARKING**

3  
4 DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE: \_\_\_\_\_

5  
6 **Any area that fails will require the driver to start over.**

7  
8 **DRIVERS SIDE**

9  
10 Pull-ups 1 2 3 F Maximum 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
11 Encroachments 1 2 3 F Maximum 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
12 Looks 1 F Maximum 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
13 Final Position 1 2 F Maximum 2 \_\_\_\_\_

14  
15 Comments:  
16  
17

18 \_\_\_\_\_  
19 **DOOR SIDE**

20 SCORE: \_\_\_\_\_

21  
22 **Any area that fails will require the driver to start over.**

23  
24  
25 Pull-ups 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
26 Encroachments 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
27 Looks 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
28 Final Position 1 2 F \_\_\_\_\_

29  
30 **Comments:**  
31  
32  
33

34 DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

35 DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

1 **VEHICLE AT SPEED - PART I**  
2 **BACKING**

3  
4 DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

5  
6 **Any area that fails will require the driver to start over.**

7  
8 **STRAIGHT LINE BACKING**

9  
10 Pull-ups 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
11 Encroachments 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
12 Looks 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
13 Final Position 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
14 Comments: \_\_\_\_\_  
15

16 \_\_\_\_\_  
17 **OFFSET BACK LEFT/RIGHT**

18 SCORE: \_\_\_\_\_

19  
20 Pull-ups 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
21 Encroachments 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
22 Looks 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
23 Final Position 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
24 Comments: \_\_\_\_\_  
25

26 **ALLEY DOCK**

27 SCORE: \_\_\_\_\_

28  
29 Pull-ups 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
30 Encroachments 1 2 3 F \_\_\_\_\_  
31 Looks 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
32 Final Position 1 F \_\_\_\_\_  
33 Comments: \_\_\_\_\_  
34

35  
36  
37 DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

38 DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_  
39

**VEHICLE OPERATION AT SPEED PART 2**  
**ONE (1) HOUR**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

Local school district transportation departments should use these score sheets to verify that “vehicle at speed” was performed for a minimum of one (1) hour. The following items must be covered during the “vehicle at speed” part 2 stage.

	Pass/Fail	Comments
1. 90 Degree left hand turn, range course to include 10 mph. (50’ outside radius and 36’ inside radius)	Pass/Fail	
2. 90 Degree right hand turn (same radius)	Pass/Fail	
3. Irregular surface – driving right wheels off an irregular surface 3” curb or road at 10 mph in an 11’ landing area. Maneuver shall be performed at 75’ distance dimension, safe recovery.	Pass/Fail	
4. Straight ahead panic brake at 20 mph on command. Stop the bus 30’ from designated stopping point and prior to reaching a marking cone 40’ from first cone.	Pass/Fail	
5. Evasive maneuver through an opening, driving the serpentine right or left on tester command at 15mph hitting no cones. (80’ from opening to first cone, other cones 60’ apart) make 180 degree turn and serpentine opposite direction.	Pass/Fail	

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION**  
**MINIMUM TWO (2) HOURS**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

The student must drive a school bus route under the supervision of the driver training instructor with the school bus empty.

Student loading and unloading requires 100% accuracy.

Pass/Fail      Comments

**SCHOOL LOADING/UNLOADING**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| a. Loading and/or unloading steps followed | Pass/Fail |
| b. Loading area bus placement from curb    | Pass/Fail |
| c. Proper use of lights                    | Pass/Fail |

**SCHOOL BUS ROUTE DRIVING**

- |                            |           |
|----------------------------|-----------|
| a. Proper transmission use | Pass/Fail |
| b. Blind curves            | Pass/Fail |
| c. Hills                   | Pass/Fail |
| d. Proper downhill braking | Pass/Fail |
| e. High density traffic    | Pass/Fail |
| f. Speed for conditions    | Pass/Fail |
| g. Railroad negotiation    | Pass/Fail |

**STUDENT LOADING/UNLOADING ON ROUTES**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| a. Loading and/or unloading steps followed               | Pass/Fail |
| b. Students counted when entering/exiting the bus.       | Pass/Fail |
| c. Mirror usage before stopping and before pulling away. | Pass/Fail |
| d. Allow student to be seated before moving the bus.     | Pass/Fail |

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_



**DRIVER REVIEW I**  
**MINIMUM TWO (2) HOURS**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

**\*\*To be completed within five (5) school days of completion of the core curriculum. \*\***

Skills Tested	Pass/Fail	Comments
A. Seat belt fastened	Pass/Fail	
B. Proper use of the turn signals.	Pass/Fail	
C. Speed for conditions	Pass/Fail	
D. Knowledge of all bus components and controls	Pass/Fail	
E. Orderly and regimented mirror usage	Pass/Fail	
F. Proper hand positioning on steering wheel	Pass/Fail	
G. Acceptable two-point turnabout	Pass/Fail	
H. Proper following distance	Pass/Fail	
I. Continuous visual scanning	Pass/Fail	
J. Proper foot positioning	Pass/Fail	
K. Good posture	Pass/Fail	
L. Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence	Pass/Fail	
M. Railroad negotiation	Pass/Fail	
N. Hand of hand steering technique used exclusively	Pass/Fail	
O. Openness to criticism and suggestions	Pass/Fail	

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**DRIVER REVIEW II**  
**MINIMUM TWO (2) HOURS**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

**To be completed within thirty (30) to forty-five (45) days of completion of Driver Review I, or 45 days after school has started if driver trained during the summer. Two-hour minimum requirement.**

The steps for Loading and Unloading and Railroad must be 100% to pass.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35

Skills Tested	Pass/Fail	Comments
A. Seat belt fastened	Pass/Fail	
B. Proper use of the turn signals.	Pass/Fail	
C. Speed for conditions	Pass/Fail	
D. Knowledge of all bus components and controls	Pass/Fail	
E. Orderly and regimented mirror usage	Pass/Fail	
F. Proper hand positioning on steering wheel	Pass/Fail	
G. Acceptable two-point turnabout	Pass/Fail	
H. Proper following distance	Pass/Fail	
I. Continuous visual scanning	Pass/Fail	
J. Proper foot positioning	Pass/Fail	
K. Good posture	Pass/Fail	
L. Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence	Pass/Fail	
M. Railroad negotiation	Pass/Fail	
N. All students signaled	Pass/Fail	
O. All students counted when entering/exiting the bus.	Pass/Fail	
P. Students seated when bus is in motion.	Pass/Fail	
Q. Hand of hand steering technique used exclusively	Pass/Fail	
R. Openness to criticism and suggestions	Pass/Fail	

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**DRIVER REVIEW III**  
**MINIMUM TWO (2) HOURS**

DRIVER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE \_\_\_\_\_

**To be completed within thirty three (3) to six (6) months of completion of Driver Review II.**  
**Two-hour minimum requirement.**

Skills Tested	Pass/Fail	Comments
A. Pre-Trip Inspection	Pass/Fail	
B. Seat belt fastened	Pass/Fail	
C. Proper use of the turn signals.	Pass/Fail	
D. Speed for conditions	Pass/Fail	
E. Knowledge of all bus components and controls	Pass/Fail	
F. Orderly and regimented mirror usage	Pass/Fail	
G. Proper hand positioning on steering wheel	Pass/Fail	
H. Acceptable two-point turnabout	Pass/Fail	
I. Proper following distance	Pass/Fail	
J. Continuous visual scanning	Pass/Fail	
K. Proper foot positioning	Pass/Fail	
L. Good posture	Pass/Fail	
M. Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence	Pass/Fail	
N. Railroad negotiation	Pass/Fail	
O. All students signaled	Pass/Fail	
P. All students counted when entering/exiting the bus.	Pass/Fail	
Q. Students seated when bus is in motion.	Pass/Fail	
R. Student/Driver relationships	Pass/Fail	
S. Bus atmosphere	Pass/Fail	
T. Acceptable condition of bus	Pass/Fail	
U. Check for children and articles before leaving the bus.	Pass/Fail	
V. Post-trip Inspection	Pass/Fail	
W. Hand of hand steering technique used exclusively	Pass/Fail	
X. Openness to criticism and suggestions	Pass/Fail	

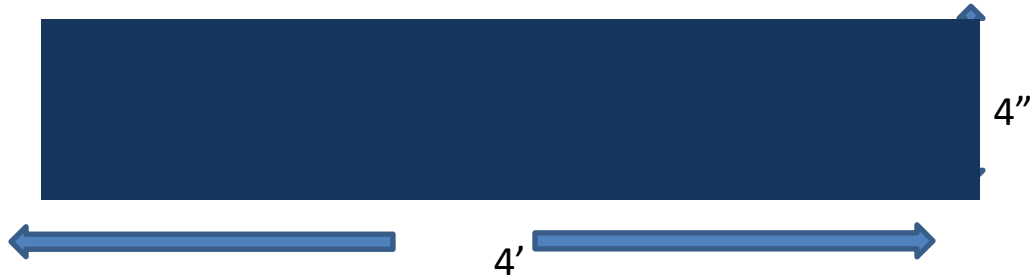
DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

<b>Number of Questions</b>	Number Correct To Reach 80% Minimum	<b>Number of Questions</b>	Number Correct To Reach 80% Minimum	<b>Number of Questions</b>	Number Correct To Reach 80% Minimum
5	4	47	38	89	72
6	5	48	39	90	72
7	6	49	40	91	73
8	7	50	40	92	74
9	8	51	41	93	75
10	8	52	42	94	76
11	9	53	43	95	76
12	10	54	44	96	77
13	11	55	44	97	78
14	12	56	45	98	80
15	12	57	46	99	80
16	13	58	47	100	80
17	14	59	48		
18	15	60	48		
19	16	61	49		
20	16	62	50		
21	17	63	51		
22	18	64	52		
23	19	65	52		
24	20	66	53		
25	20	67	54		
26	21	68	55		
27	22	69	56		
28	23	70	56		
29	24	71	57		
30	24	72	58		
31	25	73	59		
32	26	74	60		
33	27	75	60		
34	28	76	61		
35	28	77	62		
36	29	78	63		
37	30	79	64		
38	31	80	64		
39	32	81	65		
40	32	82	66		
41	33	83	67		
42	34	84	68		
43	35	85	68		
44	36	86	69		
45	36	87	70		
46	37	88	71		

1  
2

## STOP LINE INSTRUCTIONS



Stop sign should be placed to right of stop line.

3  
4  
5

### 6 PURPOSE:

7 This test is designed to determine driver's depth perception, ability to use cross view mirrors and  
8 ability to bring bus to smooth, complete stop.

9

### 10 INSTRUCTIONS:

11 A stop line four feet (4') long and four inches (4") wide will be established at the end of a straight  
12 line. The driver will be expected to bring the bus to a complete stop as close to the stop line as  
13 possible. Only one (1) stop should be made; a fail will be given for more than one (1) stop. The  
14 driver can approach the stop line at any desired speed. Driver will sound horn and set the parking  
15 brake upon completion of stopping maneuver.

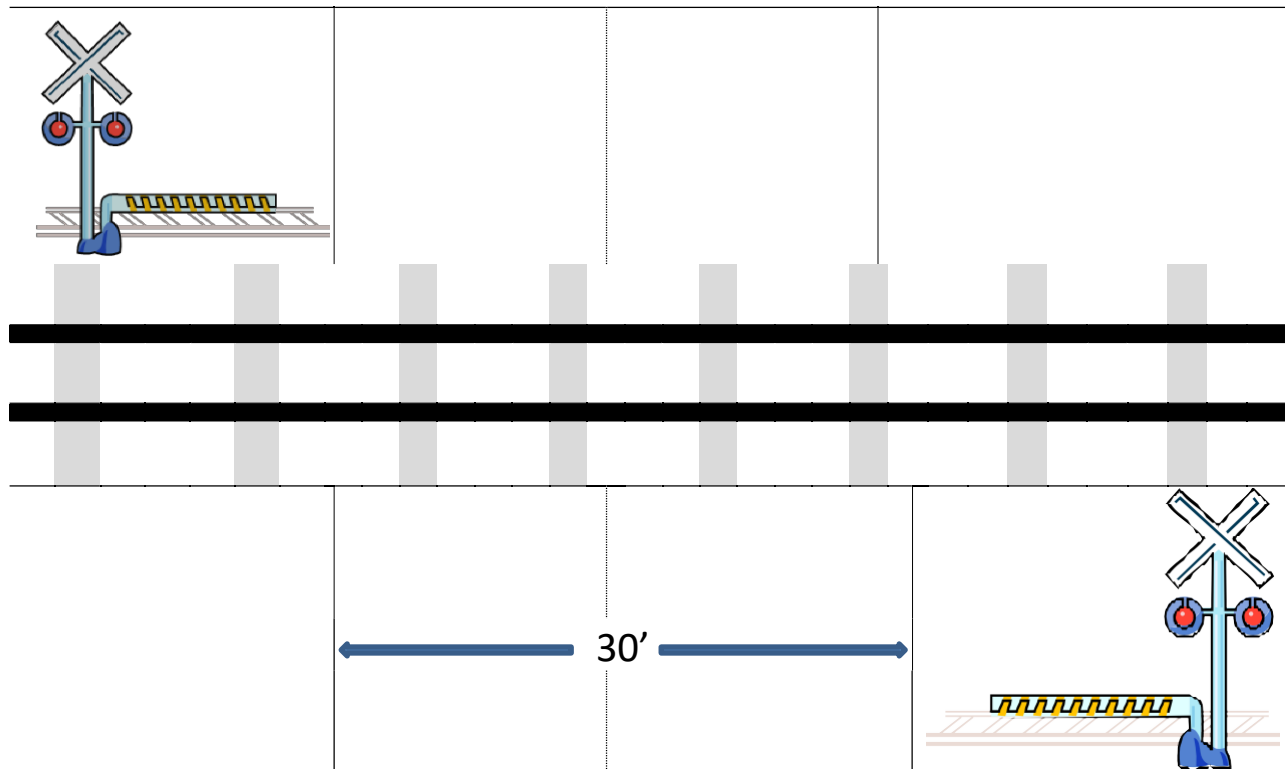
16

### 17 SCORING:

18 This is a pass or fail section. Failure to pass any of the steps will require this event to be tried  
19 again until the driver has succeeded.

1  
2

## RAILROAD CROSSING INSTRUCTIONS



3

### 4 PURPOSE:

5 The railroad crossing represents one of the greatest hazards where mass casualties or fatalities are  
6 concerned. This test is to evaluate the driver's degree of care and his/her knowledge of laws, rules and  
7 regulations when required to negotiate a school bus across railroad tracks.

8

### 9 INSTRUCTIONS:

10 A simulated railroad crossing will be established as follows:

11 A thirty foot (30") roadway that crosses one (1) parallel sets of tracks.

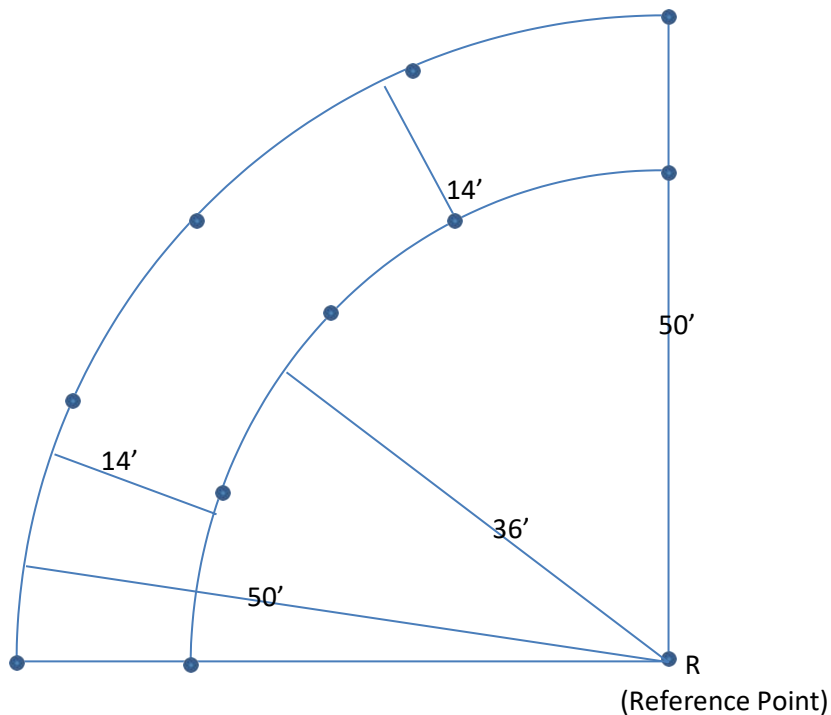
12 A railroad crossing sign will be placed in the proper position at the right side of the roadway.

13

### 14 SCORING:

15 Everything required of a driver will be judged - from the time the driver approaches the crossing until  
16 he/she reaches the other side of the crossing. The driver will be checked on his/her use of the parking  
17 brake, shutting off noise makers, mirrors, stopping the bus, opening the door, checking tracks, driving  
18 across the railroad tracks, etc. While most violations charged in this and other tests are violations of  
19 fixed laws or regulations, some are based on general safe driving procedures.

## RIGHT TURN INSTRUCTIONS



● = cone

Choose a reference point. Measure out 36' and arc an inside line.

Next, measure 50' from the same reference point and arc an outside line. This gives you a 14' alley.

### PURPOSE:

This test is designed to determine the driver's proficiency in judging the distances and handling of the bus in making a right hand turn.

### INSTRUCTIONS:

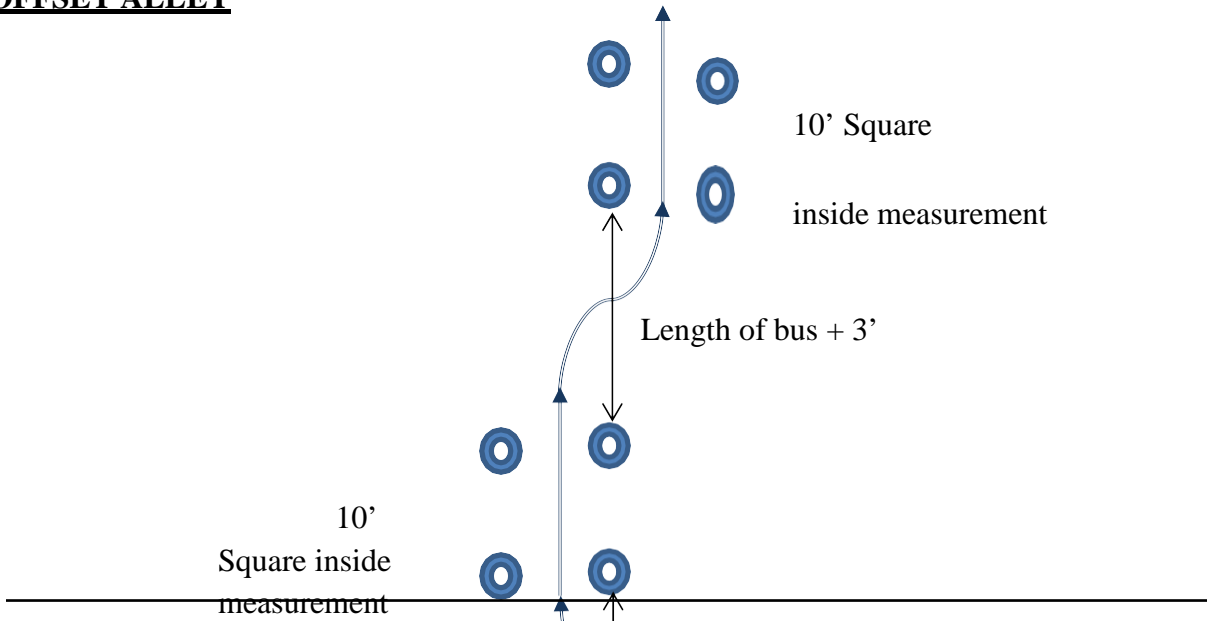
Everything required of a driver in making a smooth right hand turn will be included. No stop of the bus is required.

### SCORING:

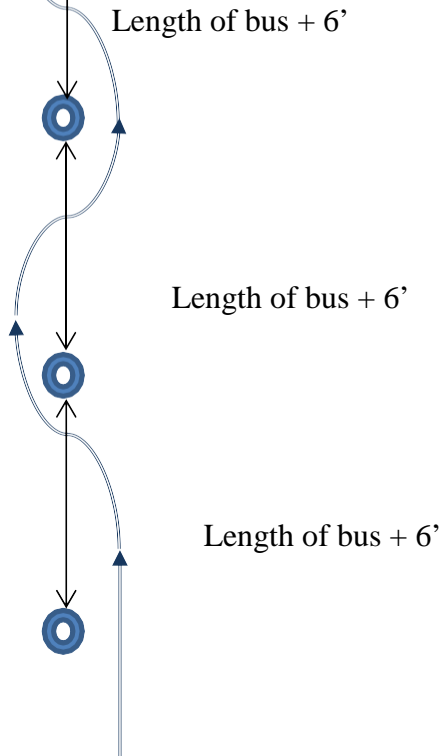
Driver will be scored on use of turn signal, checking cross traffic, proper traffic lane, hitting inside or outside markers.

# SERPENTINE – OFFSET ALLEY INSTRUCTIONS

## OFFSET ALLEY



## SERPENTINE





## **SERPENTINE INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

### **PURPOSE:**

This test is designed to determine driver's ability to steer a school bus in close limits.

### **INSTRUCTIONS:**

Bus must pass through the three (3) markers alternately to the, right of the first, to the left of the second, etc. The markers shall be placed the length of the bus plus six feet (6') apart including the distance between the third serpentine obstacle and the first offset alley obstacle. Bus must be operated in continuous motion during the test except for the stop made before beginning the initial forward motion.

### **SCORING:**

A driver will fail for moving in a jerking fashion, stopping during the problem, backing during the problem, or bumping, scraping or knocking over a marker or if the driver does not follow instructions or passes up the problem.

## **OFFSET ALLEY INSTRUCTIONS**

### **PURPOSE:**

This test is designed to evaluate a driver's ability to handle his/her bus under actual or simulated driving conditions. An offset alley is set up to determine the driver's ability to drive his/her bus through two (2) offset lanes with a minimum of hesitation and without touching the barriers.

### **INSTRUCTIONS:**

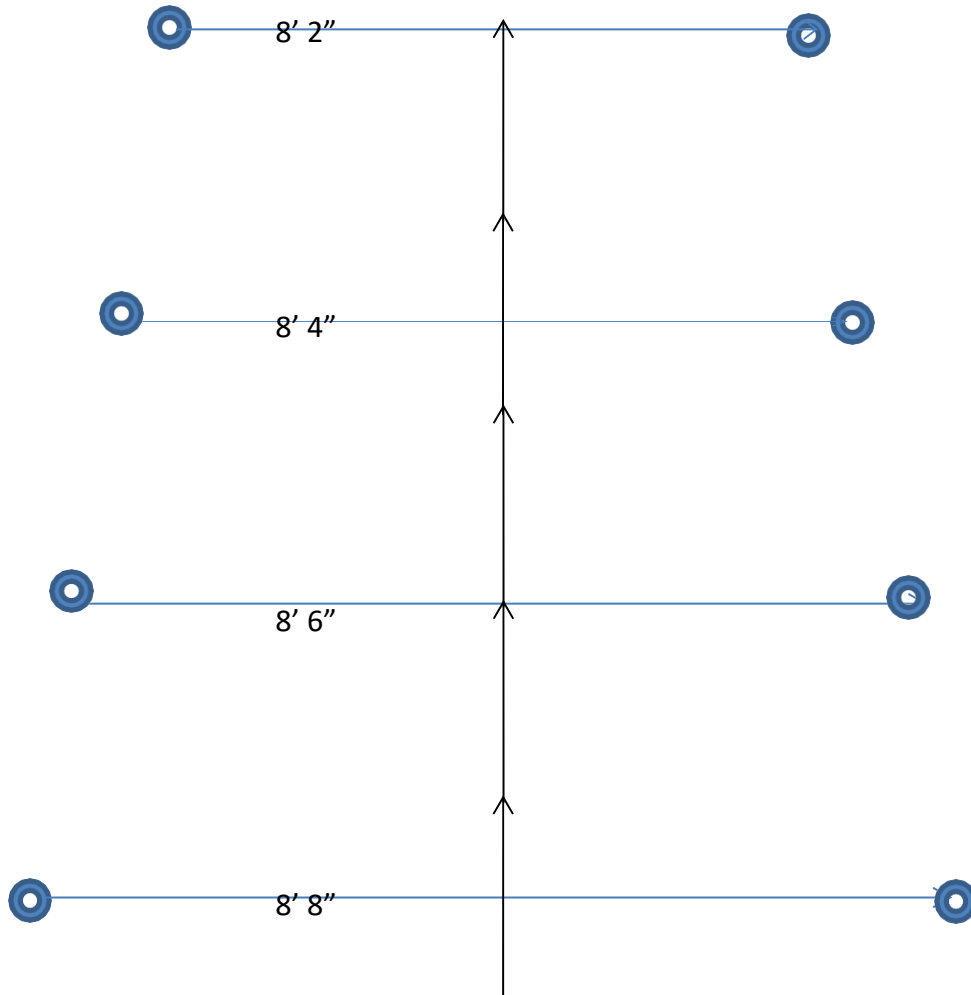
Two (2) sets of parallel barriers, ten feet (10') long and ten feet (10') wide. The right hand barrier of the first set is placed in a direct line with the left hand barrier of the second set (the offset barriers). The distance between the two (2) sets of barriers (from the end of the first set to the beginning of the second set) will be the length of the bus plus three feet (3').

### **SCORING**

Demerits will be given for moving in a jerking fashion, stopping during the problem, backing during the problem, or bumping, scraping or knocking over a marker or if the driver does not follow instructions or passes up the problem.

## DIMINISHING CLEARANCE INSTRUCTIONS

Side barriers are tall cones. The first flight of cones are placed 8' 8" apart. The second flight of cones are placed 8' 6" apart. The third flight of cones are placed 8' 4" apart. The fourth and final flight of cones are placed 8' 2" apart. Each flight of cones are placed 25 (twenty-five) feet apart.



### PURPOSE:

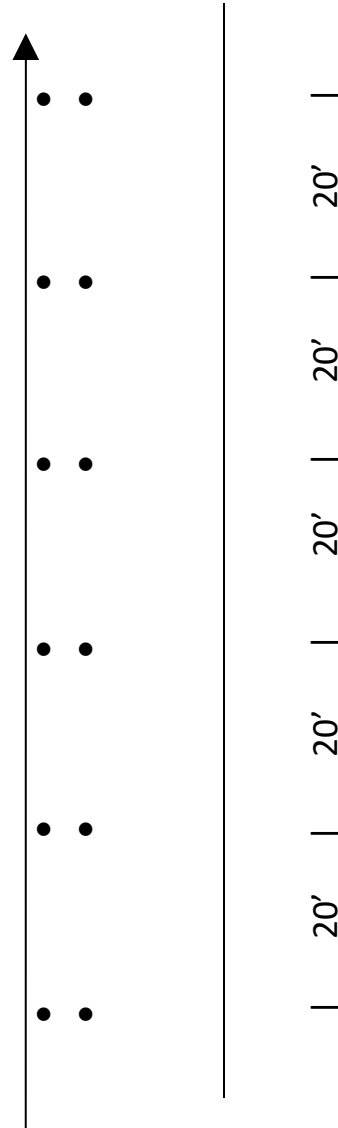
In this test, the driver is required to drive his/her bus in a straight line through diminishing clearance obstacles and in a smooth, continuous manner. The driver will be expected to proceed through this lane in a smooth and continuous manner without touching any of the marker standards

### SCORING:

A fail will be given for jerky or uneven movement, stopping the forward motion of the bus, and for each touching a marker standard.

1  
2

## STRAIGHT LINE INSTRUCTIONS



3 **PURPOSE:**

4 To determine the driver's ability to maneuver the right wheels of a school bus over a straight path  
5 with a given width.

6  
7 **INSTRUCTIONS:**

8 Right wheels of the bus must travel the path without striking or, moving the markers with any  
9 wheel. Bus must be operated in a continuous forward motion. The distance between the markers  
10 is the width of duals plus three inches (3"). The edge of the marker shall be at the height of the  
11 widest part of the rear dual tires. Each flight of markers shall be placed twenty feet (20') apart.

12

1 SCORING:

- 2 A fail will be given for stopping during the problem, touching or knocking marker off, backing
- 3 during problems or driving to either side of the markers.

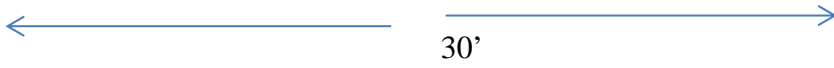
# STUDENT LOADING INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4

STUDENT  
LOADING



5  
6



## STUDENT LOADING Continued

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20

### PURPOSE:

This test is designed not only to evaluate a driver's alertness while in the process of loading and unloading elementary pupils, but to determine his/her ability to remember and perform several other quite important functions incidental to such loading. Such items include the proper use of mirrors and the 8-lamp system.

### INSTRUCTIONS:

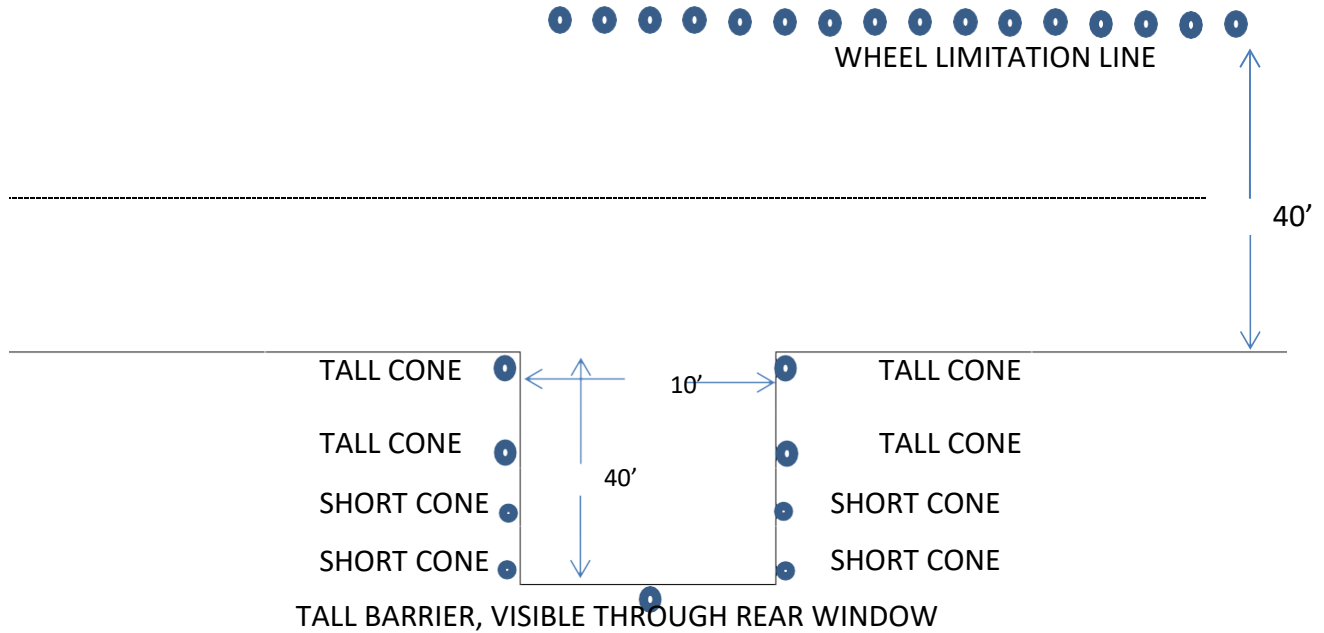
An elementary "student" (simulated) is to be picked up from a loading point on the right-hand edge of the two (2) lane roadway. The student, identified by a sign, will be standing on a curb. However, the bus must stop in the roadway since there is no park lane. The driver is to pick up this student and proceed through the course.

### SCORING:

Everything required of a driver will be judged - from the time the driver approaches the loading zone until he/she departs from the loading zone and reaches a traffic lane. The driver will be checked on his/her use of the parking broke, 8-lamp system, mirrors, etc. While most of the violations chargeable in this and other tests are violations of fixed laws and regulations, some are based on general safe driving procedures.

1  
2

## ALLEY DOCK



3

### 4 PURPOSE:

5 This test is designed to determine the driver's ability to back the school bus into a restricted  
6 space.

7

### 8 INSTRUCTIONS:

9 Each stall (or bay) is identified by parallel white lines on the pavement ten feet (10') apart. Each  
10 front corner will be marked with upright standards. In order to limit the driver to established  
11 maneuvering room, a front wheel limitation line shall be placed on the pavement, perpendicular  
12 to the parallel stall marker lines. The approach to the back-up stall will be made from the right  
13 hand side only. The distance from the front stall standards to the wheel limitation line will be  
14 forty feet (40').

15

### 16 SCORING:

17 Each driver will be permitted one (1) pull-up before a fail will be charged. A fail will be given if  
18 the driver pulls up more than once. Upon completion of the test, the bus should be parked as near  
19 to the center of the ten foot (10') stall as possible (both ends of the bus). A fail will be given for  
20 stopping more than 6 inches from the marker. Centering will be determined by the relationship of

- 1 the center of the front and rear bumpers to the center of the stall, but with only the single greatest
- 2 distance off center (front OR rear) being used to compute demerits. A fail will be given if the bus
- 3 is parked in excess of two feet (1') from the rear barrier. Driver will sound horn upon completion
- 4 of parking maneuver.



1 **PHYSICAL AND VERBAL INSPECTION INSTRUCTIONS**

2  
3 **PURPOSE:**

4 A school bus driver is required by law to make an inspection of his/her bus before transporting  
5 pupils. A school bus found to be unsafe shall not be used for the transportation of pupils until  
6 such defects are corrected. Such inspection should be planned and conducted in a systematic and  
7 logical manner to assure that all defects are noted. The purpose of this test is to evaluate the  
8 driver efficiency in conducting this inspection.

9  
10 **INSTRUCTIONS:**

11 This test is divided into two (2) categories, the first being an evaluation of the manner in which  
12 the driver makes the inspection; and the second to judge his/her ability to make a complete  
13 physical inspection of the bus, including the general condition of the bus interior, all glass, seats,  
14 first aid kits, mirrors, horn, all gauges and instruments, windshield wipers, all brakes, all lights,  
15 all emergency exits, entrance doors, all signals and flashers, fuel, oil, water, air and tires, and  
16 general exterior.

17  
18 **SCORING:**

19 A time limit of six (6) minutes will be enforced for each driver. Drivers failing to complete this  
20 test within the six (6) minute time limit will fail. If any reasonable assistance is needed in  
21 checking the bus, the instructor will assist in any way that does not violate the spirit of the test,  
22 as in checking the operation of the stop lights.

23  
24 The instructor will write down items that drivers feel are defective, and the driver will initial  
25 each item the judge notes after he has completed the test. There will be six (6) defects on the  
26 vehicle that should be discovered by the driver on a daily check. Unless instructed otherwise, the  
27 vehicle is NOT to be started

### Vehicle at Speed Scoring Sheet

DRIVER TRAINER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRIVER TRAINER SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

**All tests should be (P)ass or (F)ail.**

Driver Name	Attempt Number	Right Turn	Diminishing Clearance	Straight Line	Serpentine	Stop Line	Straight Line Backing	Offset Left/Right	Parallel Parking Door side	Parallel Parking Driver Side	Alley Dock	Student Loading	Rail Road	Faulty Bus

Commonwealth of Kentucky  
Department of Education



---

This is to certify that

---

has completed the requirements to be  
certified as a  
Kentucky School Bus Driver

---

Date

---

Driver Trainer Signature